

Japanese FOR **DUMMIES®**

Learn to:

- Speak conversational Japanese with ease
- Master basic grammar, verb conjugations, vocabulary, and pronunciations
- Identify kana and kanji

Eriko Sato, PhD

Professor of Japanese, State University
of New York (SUNY) at Stony Brook



Contents at a Glance

Introduction **21**

Part I: Getting Started..... **7**

Chapter 1: Japanese in a Nutshell.....	9
Chapter 2: Checking Out the Japanese Sounds and Scripts.....	17
Chapter 3: Warming Up with Japanese Grammar Basics	33
Chapter 4: Starting with Simple Expressions	61
Chapter 5: Getting Your Numbers, Times, and Measurements Straight	77
Chapter 6: Speaking Japanese at Home	99

Part II: Japanese in Action **117**

Chapter 7: Getting to Know You: Making Small Talk.....	119
Chapter 8: Asking for Directions.....	131
Chapter 9: Dining Out and Going to the Market.....	147
Chapter 10: Shopping Made Easy	163
Chapter 11: Going Out on the Town.....	183
Chapter 12: Taking Care of Business and Telecommunications.....	199
Chapter 13: Recreation and the Great Outdoors	219

Part III: Japanese on the Go **233**

Chapter 14: Planning a Trip	235
Chapter 15: Dealing with Money in a Foreign Land.....	245
Chapter 16: Making Your Way Around: Planes, Trains, Taxis, and More.....	257
Chapter 17: Finding a Place to Stay	275
Chapter 18: Handling Emergencies.....	291

Part IV: The Part of Tens **309**

Chapter 19: Ten Ways to Pick Up Japanese Quickly	311
Chapter 20: Ten Things Never to Say in Japanese.....	315
Chapter 21: Ten Favorite Japanese Expressions	319
Chapter 22: Ten Phrases That Make You Sound Fluent in Japanese	323

Chapter 8

Asking for Directions

In This Chapter

- ▶ Using “where” questions to determine location
 - ▶ Asking “how do I get to” questions
 - ▶ Understanding landmark references and active directions
-

If you can ask for directions in Japanese, you’re ready to go anywhere in Japan. Japanese will enjoy talking to you and offering their help. This chapter gives you the words and phrases necessary for receiving directions.

Figuring Out Where Places Are Located

One of the most basic questions to help you get where you need to go is *where*. If you can’t ask “where” questions and understand the answers, you’ll probably be spending a lot of time at home. That’s no good, so the following sections help you ask where things are located so that you aren’t stuck in the house.

Asking “where” questions

Suppose you want to go to the city hall. You know it’s near the subway station, but you can’t see it. What do you do? Why, you ask a kind-looking stranger where the city hall is. If no one looks nice, ask someone who looks mean. People are usually nicer than they look.

Where in Japanese is **doko** (doh-koh). But you can’t just say **doko**. You’ll sound like you have a very bad concussion and don’t know where you are. Mention what you’re looking for first — for example, **shiyakusho** (shee-yah-koo-shoh) (*city hall*).



Put the topic particle **wa** after the place you're looking for. Then add **doko desu ka** (doh-koh deh-soo kah) (*where is*) or **doko ni arimasu ka** (doh-koh nee ah-ree-mah-soo kah) (*where is it located*). You can use either one, but **doko desu ka** is shorter and probably easier for you to say. Here are a couple of examples of how to form "where" questions:

病院はどこですか。 **Byōin wa doko desu ka.** (byohh-een wah doh-koh deh-soo kah.) (*Where is the hospital?*)

銀行はどこにありますか。 **Ginkō wa doko ni arimasu ka.** (geen-kohh wah doh-koh nee ah-ree-mah-soo kah.) (*Where is the bank located?*)

The places you want to look for may include the following:

- ✓ アメリカ大使館 **Amerika taishikan** (ah-meh-ree-kah tah-ee-shee-kahn) (*American embassy*)
- ✓ バス停 **basu-tei** (bah-soo-tehh) (*bus stop*)
- ✓ 病院 **byōin** (byohh-een) (*hospital*)
- ✓ 映画館 **eigakan** (ehh-gah-kahn) (*movie theater*)
- ✓ 駅 **eki** (eh-kee) (*train/subway station*)
- ✓ 学校 **gakkō** (gahk-kohh) (*school*)
- ✓ ガソリンスタンド **gasorin sutando** (gah-soh-reen soo-tahn-doh) (*gas station*)
- ✓ 銀行 **ginkō** (geen-kohh) (*bank*)
- ✓ 博物館 **hakubutsukan** (hah-koo-boo-tssoo-kahn) (*museum*)
- ✓ コンビニ **konbini** (kohn-bee-nee) (*convenience store*)
- ✓ 薬屋 **kusuriya** (koo-soo-ree-yah) (*pharmacy*)
- ✓ 市役所 **shiyakusho** (shee-yah-koo-shoh) (*city hall*)
- ✓ 図書館 **toshokan** (toh-shoh-kahn) (*library*)
- ✓ 役場 **yakuba** (yah-koo-bah) (*town hall*)
- ✓ 郵便局 **yūbinkyoku** (yooo-been-kyoh-koo) (*post office*)

Getting basic location/position answers



The easiest way to answer "where" questions is to point and say "there," so many Japanese whom you ask for directions will simply point their index fingers while saying **Asoko desu.** (ah-soh-koh deh-soo.) (*It's over there.*) Other location words you may hear in conjunction with pointing are **koko** (koh-koh) and **soko** (soh-koh). (Notice how they all end in **oko**?) Table 8-1 shows you what each word means in English and the location it refers to.

Table 8-1**Pronouns for Location**

Japanese	Pronunciation	English	Location
ここ koko	koh-koh	<i>here</i>	near the speaker
そこ soko	soh-koh	<i>there; near you</i>	near the listener but far from the speaker
あそこ asoko	ah-soh-koh	<i>over there</i>	far from both the speaker and the listener

If pointing and the short location words in Table 8-1 aren't sufficient, your helper may describe the location with some of the position words in Table 8-2.

Table 8-2**Position Words**

Position Phrase	Pronunciation	English
間 aida	ah-ee-dah	<i>between</i>
近く chikaku	chee-kah-koo	<i>near</i>
反対 (側) hantai (gawa)	hahn-tah-ee (gah-wah)	<i>opposite (side)</i>
左 (側) hidari (gawa)	hee-dah-ree (gah-wa)	<i>left (side)</i>
前 mae	mah-eh	<i>front</i>
右 (側) migi (gawa)	mee-gee (gah-wah)	<i>right (side)</i>
向かい (側) mukai (gawa)	moo-kah-ee (gah-wah)	<i>across the street from</i>
そば soba	soh-bah	<i>right near</i>
後ろ ushiro	oo-shee-roh	<i>behind</i>
横 yoko	yoh-koh	<i>side</i>



You use **tonari** (toh-nah-ree) (*next to*) only if you’re dealing with two similar things like two buildings, two people, or two seats. For two different things that are close to each other, you use **yoko** (yoh-koh) to express *next to*. For example, if you want to say *There is a police officer next to the museum.* in Japanese, say **Keisatsukan ga hakubutsukan no yoko ni imasu.** (kehh-sah-tsoo-kahn gah hah-koo-boo-tsoo-kahn noh yoh-koh nee ee-mah-soo.)



You can’t use one of the position words in Table 8-2 all by itself to describe the location of something. If you say *My house is on the left,* no one will understand you. You have to indicate what your house is to the left of as a reference point. Use the particle **no** to create a modifier phrase that gives the reference point, and place it right before one of the position words from Table 8-2. For example, **ginkō no hidari** means *the bank’s left*, or *to the left of the bank.* **Remember:** The position **aida** (*between*) requires two reference points; connect them with the particle **to**.

The following phrases put some of these modifiers in context:

図書館は学校の後ろです。 **Toshokan wa gakkō no ushiro desu.** (toh-shoh-kahn wah gahk-kohh noh oo-shee-roh deh-soo.) (*The library is behind the school.*)

郵便局は図書館と市役所の間です。 **Yūbinkyoku wa toshokan to shiyakusho no aida desu.** (yooo-been-kyoh-koo wah toh-shoh-kahn toh shee-yah-koo-shoh noh ah-ee-dah deh-soo.) (*The post office is between the library and the city hall.*)

学校は病院の前です。 **Gakkō wa byōin no mae desu.** (gah-kohh wah byohh-een noh mah-eh deh-soo.) (*The school is in front of the hospital.*)

銀行は病院の隣です。 **Ginkō wa byōin no tonari desu.** (geen-kohh wah byohh-een noh toh-nah-ree deh-soo.) (*The bank is next to the gas station.*)

Specifying how far or how near you are to a location is often very helpful information. The word for *far* is **tōi** (tohh-ee), and the word for *near* is **chikai** (chee-kah-ee). To be more informative, you can use adverbs such as **chotto** (choht-toh) (*a little bit*), **sugu** (soo-goo) (*right, just*), or **totemo** (toh-teh-moh) (*very much*). Take a look at these examples:

ちょっと遠いですよ。 **Chotto tōi desu yo.** (choht-toh tohh-ee deh-soo yoh.) (*It's a bit far.*)

すぐそこです。 **Sugu soko desu.** (soo-goo soh-koh deh-soo.) (*It's right there.*)

とても近いです。 **Totemo chikai desu.** (toh-teh-moh chee-kah-ee deh-soo.) (*It's very close.*)



Desu is used a lot for expressing locations, but it also expresses the identity, property, characteristics, or the state of people and things. To see how to conjugate **desu**, turn to Chapter 3. For examples of **desu** in action, check out the following list:

私は学生です。 **Watashi wa gakusei desu.** (wah-tah-shee wah gah-koo-sehh deh-soo.) (*I'm a student.*)

恵美子さんは優しいです。 **Emiko-san wa yasashii desu.** (eh-mee-koh-sahn wah yah-sah-sheee deh-soo.) (*Emiko is kind.*)

すしはおいしいです。 **Sushi wa oishii desu.** (soo-shee wah oh-ee-sheeee deh-soo.) (*Sushi is delicious.*)

今日は寒いです。 **Kyō wa samui desu.** (kyohh wah sah-moo-ee deh-soo.) (*It is cold today.*)

Talkin' the Talk



Ben is looking for a subway station. He asks a woman where it is.
(Track 16)

Ben: **Sumimasen. Chikatetsu no eki wa doko desu ka.**
 soo-mee-mah-sehn. chee-kah-teh-tsoo noh eh-kee
 wah doh-koh deh-soo kah.
 Excuse me. Where is the subway station?

Woman: **Chikatetsu no eki wa asoko desu.**
 chee-kah-teh-tsoo noh eh-kee wah ah-soh-koh
 deh-soo.
 The subway station is over there.

Ben: **Ano hon'ya no tonari desu ka.**
 ah-noh hohn-yah noh toh-nah-ree deh-soo kah.
 The one next to the bookstore?

Woman: **Hai.**
 hah-ee.
 Right.

Ben: **Arigatō gozaimashita.**
 ah-ree-gah-tohh goh-zah-ee-mah-shee-tah.
 Thank you very much.

Woman: **Īe.**
 eee-eh.
 No problem.

Words to Know

chikatetsu no eki	chee-kah-teh-tsoo noh eh-kee	subway station
doko	doh-koh	where
asoko desu	ah-soh-koh deh-soo	over there
hon'ya	hohn-yah	bookstore
tonari	toh-nah-ree	next to

Pinpointing an exact location

Having someone tell you that the bank is “over there” is all well and good, but it’s not effective when you can’t easily tell where “over there” is. To be really helpful, directions have to pinpoint specific locations unambiguously. Words and phrases such as *north*, *the third building*, and *five minutes’ walk* all help to clarify where something is located. I give you the words you need in the sections that follow.

Using cardinal points

Migi (mee-gee) (*right*) and **hidari** (hee-dah-ree) (*left*) are great. However, after you turn 180 degrees or make a couple of lefts and rights, you may get confused. To avoid any confusion, your helper may specify *cardinal points* such as north and east and *ordinal points* such as northwest and southwest.

- ✓ 東 **higashi** (hee-gah-shee) (*east*)
- ✓ 北 **kita** (kee-tah) (*north*)
- ✓ 南 **minami** (mee-nah-mee) (*south*)
- ✓ 西 **nishi** (nee-shee) (*west*)
- ✓ 北西 **hokusei** (hoh-koo-sehh) (*northwest*)
- ✓ 北東 **hokutō** (hoh-koo-tohh) (*northeast*)
- ✓ 南西 **nansei** (nahn-sehh) (*southwest*)
- ✓ 南東 **nantō** (nahn-tohh) (*southeast*)

Specifying the order

Ordinal-number phrases such as *the first* and *the second* are essential for pinpointing houses, buildings, intersections, and streets. Remember that you can

convert quantity phrases into ordinal-number phrases just by adding **-me** (meh) after them. (Go to Chapter 5 for more information on ordinal numbers.)

2つ目の交差点 futa-tsu-me no kōsaten (foo-tah-tsoo-meh noh kohh-sah-tehn) (*the second intersection*)

1つ目の建物 hito-tsu-me no tatemono (hee-toh-tsoo-meh noh tah-teh-moh-noh) (*the first building*)

右側の3つ目の家 migi gawa no mit-tsu-me no ie (mee-gee gah-wah noh meet-tsoo-meh noh ee-eh) (*the third house on the right-hand side*)

4本目の道 yon-hon-me no michi (yohn-hohn-meh noh mee-chee) (*the fourth street*)

Stating how far

You can express how far away a location is by specifying either the time it takes to get somewhere or the actual distance. In urban areas in Japan, many people use public transportation instead of automobiles. As a result, directions often include an estimate of the number of minutes it would take to walk from the nearest station. Japanese use the counters **-pun** (foon) for *minutes* and **-jikan** (jee-kahn) for *hours*. Following are a few examples:

ここから駅まで10分です。Koko kara eki made 10-pun desu. (koh-koh kah-rah eh-kee mah-deh joop-poon deh-soo.) (*The train station is ten minutes away from here.*)

歩いて30分です。Aruite 30-pun desu. (ah-roo-ee-teh sahn-joop-poon deh-soo.) (*Thirty minutes on foot.*)

空港までバスで1時間です。Kūkō made basu de ichi-jikan desu. (koo-kohh mah-deh bah-soo deh ee-chee-jee-kahn deh-soo.) (*It's an hour to the airport by bus.*)

東京から新幹線で2時間です。Tōkyō kara shinkansen de ni-jikan desu. (tohh-kyohh kah-rah sheen-kahn-sehn deh nee-jee-kahn deh-soo.) (*It takes two hours from Tokyo by Shinkansen [bullet train].*)

Of course, you can also specify the actual distance. For example, **Eki made ni-kiro desu.** (eh-kee mah-deh nee-kee-roh deh-soo.) means *It's two kilometers to the railway station.*

To say *approximately* or *about*, you add **gurai** (goo-rah-ee) after the time or distance expression as in the following examples:

ここから車で5分ぐらいです。Koko kara kuruma de go-fun gurai desu. (koh-koh kah-rah koo-roo-mah deh goh-foon goo-rah-ee deh-soo.) (*It's about five minutes from here by car.*)

ここから1マイルぐらいです。Koko kara ichi-mairu gurai desu. (koh-koh kah-rah ee-chee mah-ee-roo goo-rah-ee deh-soo.) (*It's about one mile from here.*)



Some people say **kurai** (koo-rah-ee) rather than **gurai**, but younger people tend to say **gurai** more frequently than they say **kurai**.

Talkin' the Talk



Masako is looking for the post office. She asks a man on the street to help her. (Track 17)

Masako: **Sumimasen. Yūbinkyoku wa chikaku ni arimasu ka.**
soo-mee-mah-sehn. yooo-been-kyoh-koo wah chee-kaah-koo nee ah-ree-mah-soo kah.
Excuse me. Is there a post office nearby?

Man **Ē. Aruite 5-fun desu yo.**
ehh. ah-roo-ee-teh goh-foon deh-soo yoh.
Yes. Just a 5-minute walk.

Masako: **Ā, sō desu ka.**
ahh, sohh deh-soo kah.
Oh, really?

Man: **Koko kara mitten-me no kōsaten desu.**
koh-koh kah-rah meet-tsoo-meh noh kohh-sah-tehn
deh-soo.
It's at the third intersection from here.

Masako: **Higashi gawa desu ka.**
hee-gah-shee gah-wah deh-soo kah.
Is it on the east side?

Man: **Īe. Nishi gawa desu.**
eee-eh. nee-shee gah-wah deh-soo.
No, it's on the west side.

Masako: **Ā, dōmo.**
ahh, dohh-moh.
Oh, thanks.

Man: **Īe.**
eee-eh.
No problem.

Words to Know

yūbinkyoku	<i>yooo-been-kyoh-koo</i>	post office
chikaku	<i>chee-kah-koo</i>	nearby
ni arimasu	<i>nee ah-ree-mah-soo</i>	to be located at
mittsu-me	<i>meet-tsoo-meh</i>	third
kōsaten	<i>kohh-sah-tehn</i>	intersection
koko kara	<i>koh-koh kah-rah</i>	from here
higashi gawa	<i>hee-gah-shee gah-wah</i>	east side
nishi gawa	<i>nee-shee gah-wah</i>	west side

Finding Your Way to Your Destination

“Where” questions are great, but after you know the where, you probably also want to know how to get there. In the following sections, I help you get the information you need to get where you’re going.

Requesting travel instructions



You can ask a fellow traveler at the bus stop or in the train or subway station for directions. Chances are you’ll find someone who is heading in the same direction as you. If so, your journey will become easier and more fun. Just follow your new best friend (cautiously, of course).

To ask “how do I get to . . .” questions, use the question word **dōyatte** (dohh-yaht-teh) (*how*). Place it right after the destination phrase and the particle **wa** (wah) in the question. You can see it in the following examples:

アメリカ大使館はどうやって行くんですか。 **Amerika taishikan wa dōyatte iku-n-desu ka.** (ah-meh-ree-kah tah-ee-shee-kahn wah dohh-yaht-teh ee-koon-deh-soo kah.) (*How do I get to the American embassy?*)

市役所はどうやって行くんですか。 **Shiyakusho wa dōyatte iku-n-desu ka.** (shee-yah-koo-shoh wah dohh-yaht-teh ee-koon-deh-soo kah.) (*How do I get to city hall?*)



You may be asking about a very specific location, like a restaurant called Fuji. Before asking *How can I get to Fuji?*, you may want to ask *Do you know the restaurant called Fuji?* This way, the person knows you aren't talking about the famous mountain but rather a restaurant. To ask *do you know*, say **shitte imasu ka** (sheet-teh ee-mah-soo kah). To say . . . *called* . . . , say the proper name, followed by **to iu** (toh ee-oo or toh yooo) and the kind of location (in this case, a restaurant), as in **Fuji to iu resutoran** (foo-jee toh ee-oo reh-soo-toh-rahn) (*a restaurant called Fuji*). You can use this construction for asking about things other than directions, too:

由紀さんという人を知っていますか。 **Yuki-san to iu hito o shitte imasu ka.** (yoo-kee sahn toh ee-oo hee-toh oh sheet-teh ee-mah-soo kah.) (*Do you know the person called Yuki?*)

岡崎というところを知っていますか。 **Okazaki to iu tokoro o shitte imasu ka.** (oh-kah-zah-kee toh ee-oo toh-koh-roh oh sheet-teh ee-mah-soo kah.) (*Do you know the place called Okazaki?*)

たこ焼きという食べ物を知っていますか。 **Takoyaki to iu tabemono o shitte imasu ka.** (tah-koh-yah-kee toh ee-oo tah-beh-moh-noh oh sheet-teh ee-mah-soo kah.) (*Do you know the food called takoyaki?*)

Finding out whether you need transportation to get to your destination is always a good idea. Ask whether your destination is within walking distance. Use the **u**-verb **aruku** (ah-roo-koo) (*to walk*) in the “can” form in this case. (Check out Chapter 13 for a discussion of this verb form.)

ここから秋葉原まで歩けますか。 **Koko kara Akihabara made aruke-masu ka.** (koh-koh kah-rah ah-kee-hah-bah-rah mah-deh ah-roo-keh-mah-soo kah.) (*Can I walk to Akihabara from here?*)

市役所は歩いて行けますか。 **Shiyakusho wa aruite ikemasu ka.** (shee-yah-koo-shoh wah ah-roo-ee-teh ee-keh-mah-soo kah.) (*Can I get to city hall on foot?*)

If your destination isn't within walking distance, ask which transportation method to use. Chapter 16 shows you how to ask “which” questions and has an extensive inventory of transportation terms.

Referring to landmarks

When giving directions, people often include several landmarks that the traveler has to pass to get to his or her destination. Table 8-3 provides some common visible and semipermanent landmarks.

Table 8-3**Landmarks**

<i>Landmark</i>	<i>Pronunciation</i>	<i>English</i>
踏み切り fumikiri	foo-mee-kee-ree	<i>railway crossing</i>
橋 hashi	hah-shee	<i>bridge</i>
一時停止 ichiji teishi	ee-chee-jee tehh-shee	<i>stop sign</i>
角 kado	kah-doh	<i>corner</i>
交差点 kōsaten	kohh-sah-tehn	<i>intersection</i>
道 michi	mee-chee	<i>road</i>
信号 shingō	sheen-gohh	<i>traffic light</i>
通り tōri	tohh-ree	<i>street</i>
突き当り tsukiatari	tsoo-kee-ah-tah-ree	<i>end of the street</i>



As in English, **michi** (mee-chee) (*road*) and **tōri** (tohh-ree) (*street*) are subtly different. They both have two functions — to connect locations and to accommodate stores and houses. And though they each perform both functions, the emphasis of **michi** is on the connection and the emphasis of **tōri** is on the accommodation of shops or homes.



You can combine landmarks with the ordinal numbers introduced in Chapter 5 to give pretty specific directions, such as **mit-tsū-me no shingō** (meet-tsoo-meh noh sheen-gohh) (*the third traffic light*) or **itsu-tsū-me no kado** (ee-tsoo-tsoo-meh noh kah-doh) (*the fifth corner*).

Providing actions with directions

Most people use an imperative like *Go straight on this street for five minutes* or a request sentence such as *Please make a turn at the second intersection*. In Japanese, directions use a *request sentence* that consists of a verb in the

te-form and **kudasai** (koo-dah-sah-ee). **Kudasai** literally means *Give it to me* (or *to us*), but when used right after a verb in the **te-form**, it basically means *Do [such and such], please.* (Literally: *Do [such and such] and give that to me as a favor.*) It creates a polite request sentence.

Conjugating verbs to the **te-form** is the first step of making a request sentence. You can look at Chapter 3 to find out how to get the **te-form**, but for your convenience, I list the dictionary forms and the **te-forms** of the verbs that you need for giving directions in Table 8-4.

Table 8-4**Verbs for Giving Directions**

<i>Dictionary Form</i>	<i>Te-Form</i>	<i>English</i>
歩く aruku (ah-roo-koo)	歩いて aruite (ah-roo-ee-teh)	<i>to walk</i>
行く iku (ee-koo)	行って itte (eet-teh)	<i>to go</i>
くだる kudaru (koo-dah-roo)	くだって kudatte (koo-daht-teh)	<i>to go down</i>
曲がる magaru (mah-gah-roo)	曲がって magatte (mah-gaht-teh)	<i>to make a turn</i>
のぼる noboru (noh-boh-roo)	のぼって nobotte (noh-boht-teh)	<i>to go up</i>
乗る noru (noh-roo)	乗って notte (noht-teh)	<i>to take</i>
降りる oriru (oh-ree-roo)	降りて orite (oh-ree-teh)	<i>to get off, to go down</i>
過ぎる sugiru (soo-gee-roo)	過ぎて sugite (soo-gee-teh)	<i>to pass</i>
渡る wataru (wah-tah-roo)	渡って watatte (wah-taht-teh)	<i>to cross</i>

Of course, a person giving you directions needs to be able to tell you exactly where to move. Where do you make a turn? What do you cross? Which street do you take? The Japanese language specifies these locations by marking them with the particle **o** directly following the word for the location or landmark. (A smart person like you may wonder why you need the direct object particle **o** here, but let the scholars of grammar wonder about that.)

交差点を曲がる **kōsaten o magaru** (kohh-sah-tehn oh mah-gah-roo) (*to make a turn at the intersection*)

橋を渡る **hashi o wataru** (hah-shee oh wah-tah-roo) (*to cross the bridge*)

この道を歩く **kono michi o aruku** (koh-noh mee-chee oh ah-roo-koo) (*to walk along this road*)

銀行を過ぎる **ginkō o sugiru** (geen-kohh oh soo-gee-roo) (*to pass the bank*)

Specify the direction of your movement by marking it with the particle **ni**.

右に曲がる **migi ni magaru** (mee-gee nee mah-gah-roo) (*to make a right turn*)

東に行く **higashi ni iku** (hee-gah-shee nee ee-koo) (*to go east*)

Here are a few sample directions that put all these concepts together:

三番通りを南に行ってください。 **San-ban-dōri o minami ni itte kudasai.** (sahn-bahn-dohhh-ree oh mee-nah-mee nee eet-teh koo-dah-sah-ee.) (*Go south on Third Street, please.*)

あの角を右に曲がってください。 **Ano kado o migi ni magatte kudasai.** (ah-noh kah-doh oh mee-gee nee mah-gaht-teh koo-dah-sah-ee.) (*Please make a right at that corner.*)

駅まで歩いてください。 **Eki made aruite kudasai.** (eh-kee mah-deh ah-roo-ee-teh koo-dah-sah-ee.) (*Walk to the railway station, please.*)

新橋から浅草線に乗ってください。 **Shinbashi kara Asakusa-sen ni notte kudasai.** (sheen-bah-shee kah-rah ah-sah-koo-sah-sehn nee noht-teh koo-dah-sah-ee.) (*Take Asakusa-line from Shinbashi, please.*)

Making directions flow

To make directions flow, Japanese connect them with the word **sorekara** (soh-reh-kah-rah) (*and then*), as in these examples:

この道をまっすぐ行ってください。それから、三つ目の角を右に曲がってください。 **Kono michi o massugu itte kudasai. Sorekara, mit-tsu-me no kado o migi ni magatte kudasai.** (koh-noh mee-chee oh mahs-soo-goo eet-teh koo-dah-sah-ee. soh-reh-kah-rah, meet-tssoo-meh noh kah-doh oh mee-gee-nee mah-gaht-teh koo-dah-sah-ee.) (*Go straight on this street and then make a right at the third corner.*)

橋を渡ってください。それから、交番を過ぎてください。 **Hashi o watatte kudasai. Sorekara, kōban o sugite kudasai.** (hah-shee oh wah-taht-teh koo-dah-sah-ee. soh-reh-kah-rah, kohh-bahn oh soo-gee-teh koo-dah-sah-ee.) (*Cross the bridge and then pass the kōban [police box].*)

They may also say **sōsuruto** (sohh-soo-roo-toh) (*then*) to show what you will see afterward. For example, **Fumikiri o watatte kudasai; sōsuruto, hidari ni resutoran ga arimasu.** (foo-mee-kee-ree oh wah-taht-teh koo-dah-sah-ee; sohh-soo-roo-toh, hee-dah-ree nee reh-soo-toh-rahn gah ah-ree-mah-soo.) translates to *Please cross the railroad crossing; then you'll see a restaurant on your left.*

Talkin' the Talk



Ben is looking for a restaurant called Shiro. He asks a stranger on the street for directions. (Track 18)

Ben: **Sumimasen. Shiro to iu resotoran o shitte imasu ka.**
 soo-mee-mah-sehn. shee-roh toh ee-oo reh-soo-toh-
 rahn oh sheet-teh ee-mah-soo kah.
Excuse me. Do you know the restaurant called Shiro?

Woman: **Hai.**
 hah-ee.
 Yes.

Ben: **Dōyatte iku-n-desu ka.**
 dohh-yaht-teh ee-koon-deh-soo kah.
How can I get there?

Woman: **Tsugi no kōsaten o hidari ni magatte kudasai.**
 tsoo-gee noh kohh-sah-tehn oh hee-dah-ree nee
 mah-gaht-teh koo-dah-sah-ee.
Make a left turn at the next intersection.

Ben: **Ano shingō no kōsaten desu ne.**
 ah-noh sheen-gohh noh kohh-sah-tehn deh-soo neh.
The one with the traffic light over there, right?

Woman: **Hai. Sorekara, fumikiri o watatte kudasai. Sōsuruto, Shiro wa hidari gawa ni arimasu.**
hah-ee. sohh-reh-kah-rah, foo-mee-kee-ree oh wah-taht-teh koo-dah-sah-ee. sohh-soo-roo-toh, shee-roh wah hee-dah-ree gah-wah nee ah-ree-mah-soo.
Yes. And then cross the railway crossing. Then you'll see Shiro on your left.

Ben: **Ā, sō desu ka. Dōmo.**
ahh, sohh deh-soo kah. dohh-moh.
Oh, I see. Thank you.

Woman: **Ie.**
eee-eh.
No problem.

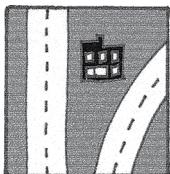
Words to Know

tsugi	tsoo-gee	next
kōsaten	kohh-sah-tehn	intersection
shingō	sheen-gohh	traffic light
sorekara	soh-reh-kah-rah	and then
fumikiri	foo-mee-kee-ree	railroad crossing
sōsuruto	sohh-soo-roo-toh	then

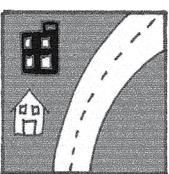


Fun & Games

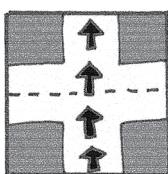
Match the pictures to the descriptions. Check the answers in Appendix D.



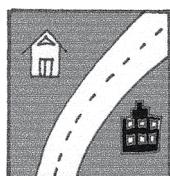
a.



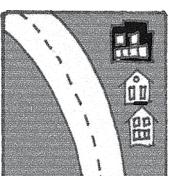
b.



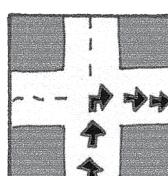
c.



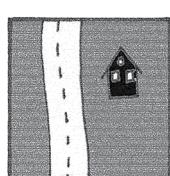
d.



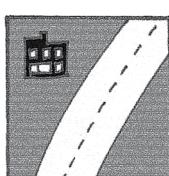
e.



f.



g.



h.

Illustration by Elizabeth Kurtzman

1. 向かい側にあります。 **Mukai gawa ni arimasu.**
2. 道の右側です。 **Michi no migi gawa desu.**
3. 道の右側の三つ目です。 **Michi no migi gawa no mit-tsuumi desu.**
4. この道をまっすぐ行きます。 **Kono michi o massugu ikimasu.**
5. 道の左側です。 **Michi no hidari gawa desu.**
6. 隣にあります。 **Tonari ni arimasu.**
7. 交差点を右に曲がります。 **Kōsaten o migi ni magarimasu.**
8. 道と道の間にあります。 **Michi to michi no aida ni arimasu.**

Chapter 9

Dining Out and Going to the Market

In This Chapter

- ▶ Going to restaurants
- ▶ Shopping for groceries

Everyone needs to eat. Sometimes, you may choose to get your food from your favorite restaurant. Other times, you may feel like cooking and head to the grocery store or farmers' market to pick up fresh meats and vegetables to prepare your meal. This chapter gives you the terms you need to know when you're eating out and when you're picking up groceries.

Eating Out at Fast-Food and Sit-Down Restaurants

Whether you're out to eat in Japan or the United States, you're bound to find all kinds of delicious options, from fast food establishments to more traditional sit-down restaurants.

Practice conjugating the verb **chūmon suru** (chooo-mohn soo-roo) (*to order*). It's actually a combination of the noun **chūmon** (*order*) and the verb **suru** (*to do*), so you can just conjugate the **suru** part. Yes, it's an irregular verb. (See Chapter 13 for more about the verb **suru**.)

<i>Japanese Script</i>	<i>Rōmaji</i>	<i>Pronunciation</i>
注文する	chūmon suru	chooo-mohn soo-roo
注文しない	chūmon shinai	chooo-mohn shee-nah-ee
注文し (ます)	chūmon shi(masu)	chooo-mohn shee(-mah-soo)
注文して	chūmon shite	chooo-mohn shee-teh

In this section, I give you the fast-food words and phrases you need whenever you decide to eat out. You're still responsible for the check, though!

Ordering fast food

In Japan, you can find some of the familiar fast-food restaurants you see in the States. Here are the names of some common fast-food dishes in Japan — or at least in Japanese:

- ✓ チーズバーガー chīzu bāgā (cheeee-zoo bahh-gahh) (*cheeseburger*)
- ✓ フライドチキン furaido chikin (foo-rah-ee-doh chee-keen) (*fried chicken*)
- ✓ フライポテト furai poteto (foo-rah-ee poh-teh-toh) (*French fries*)
- ✓ ハンバーガー hanbāgā (hahn-bahh-gahh) (*hamburger*)
- ✓ ホットドッグ hotto doggu (hoht-toh dohg-goo) (*hot dog*)
- ✓ アイスティー aisutī (ah-ee-soo tee) (*iced tea*)
- ✓ コーヒー kōhī (kohhh-heee) (*coffee*)
- ✓ コーラ kōra (kohhh-rah) (*cola*)
- ✓ オレンジジュース orenjījūsu (oh-rehn-jee jooo-soo) (*orange juice*)
- ✓ シエイク sheiku (sheh-ee-koo) (*milkshakes*)
- ✓ ピザ pizza (pee-zah) (*pizza*)
- ✓ テリヤキバーガー teriyaki bāgā (teh-ree-yah-kee bahh-gahh) (*teriyaki burger*)

You may have to answer a few questions when you order at a fast-food joint. **O-mochi kaeri desu ka.** (oh-moh-chee kah-eh-ree deh-soo kah.) means *Will you take it home?* or *To go?* **Kochira de omeshiagari desu ka.** (koh-chee-rah deh oh-meh-shee-ah-gah-ree deh-soo kah.) means *Will you eat here?* or *For here?* If you hear one of these questions, just answer with **hai** (hah-ee) (*yes*) or **ie** (eee-eh) (*no*). If you can't get by with a simple *yes* or *no*, say one of the following:

- ✓ 持って帰ります。 Motte kaerimasu. (moht-teh kah-eh-ree-mah-soo.) (*I'll take it home.*)
- ✓ ここで食べます。 Koko de tabemasu. (koh-koh deh tah-beh-mah-soo) (*I'll eat here.*)

If you want to contrast how you treat or feel about two items — for example, *I like fish but hate meat* — you can highlight each term by marking it with **wa** (wah). You can place **wa** after the noun you want to highlight and the particle that's already there. Just remember to drop the original particle if it's the subject-marking particle **ga** (gah) or the object-marking particle **o** (oh). (Chapter 3 gives you more information on using these particles.) Here are some examples:



このレストランはパスタはおいしいです。でも、ピザはまずいです。

Kono resutoran wa pasuta wa oishii desu. Demo, piza wa mazui desu.

(koh-noh reh-soo-toh-rahn wah pah-soo tah wah oh-ee-sheee deh-soo. deh-moh, pee-zah wah mah-zoo-ee deh-soo.) (*In this restaurant, pasta is delicious, but pizza is bad.*)

レストランにはよく行きます。でも、バーにはあまり行きません。

Resutoran ni wa yoku ikimasu. Demo, bā ni wa amari ikimasen. (reh-soo-toh-rahn nee wah yoh-koo ee-kee-mah-soo. deh-moh, bahh nee wa ah-mah-ree ee-kee-mah-sehn.) (*I often go to restaurants. However, I don't often go to bars.*)

サラダは食べます。でも、肉は食べません。**Sarada wa tabemasu. Demo, niku wa tabemasen.** (sah-rah-dah wah tah-beh-mah-soo. deh-moh, nee-koo wah tah-beh-mah-sehn.) (*I eat salad, but I don't eat meat.*)

レストランではお酒を飲みます。でも、家ではお酒を飲みません。

Resutoran de wa o-sake o nomimasu. Demo, ie de wa o-sake o nomimasen. (reh-soo-toh-rahn deh wah oh-sah-keh oh noh-mee-mah-soo. deh-moh, ee-eh deh wah oh-sah-keh oh noh-mee-mah-sehn.) (*I drink sake at restaurants. However, I don't drink sake at home.*)

Talkin' the Talk



Jenna is about to place an order at a fast-food restaurant. (Track 19)

Fast-food
worker:

**Irasshaimase! O-mochikaeri desu ka. Kochira de
o-meshiagari desu ka.**
ee-rahs-shah-ee-mah-seh! oh-moh-chee-kah-eh-ree
deh-soo kah. koh-chee-rah deh oh-meh-shee-ah-gah-
ree-deh-soo kah.
Welcome! Is this to go? Or will you be dining here?

Jenna:

Motte kaerimasu.
moht-teh kah-eh-ree-mah-soo.
To go, please.

Fast-food
worker:

Kashikomarimashita! Go-chūmon wa.
kah-shee-koh-mah-ree-mah-shee-tah! goh-chooo-
mohn wah.
Certainly! And your order?

Jenna:

Chīzu bāgā to teriyaki bāgā o onegai shimasu.
cheee-zoo bahh-gahh toh teh-ree-yah-kee bahh-gahh
oh oh-neh-gah-ee shee-mah-soo.
A cheeseburger and a teriyaki burger, please.

Fast-food worker:	O-nomimono wa. oh-noh-mee-moh-noh wah. <i>Anything to drink?</i>
Jenna:	Kōra to banira sheiku o onegai shimasu. kohh-rah toh bah-nee-rah sheh-ee-koo oh oh-neh-gah-ee shee-mah-soo. <i>A cola and a vanilla shake, please.</i>
Fast-food worker:	Kashikomarimashita! kah-shee-koh-mah-ree-mah-shee-tah! <i>Certainly!</i>

Words to Know

Irasshaimase!	ee-rahs-shah-ee-mah-seh!	Welcome!
O-mochikaeri desu ka.	oh-moh-chee-kah-eh-ree deh-soo kah.	Is this to go?
Kochira de o-meshiagari desu ka.	koh-chee-rah deh oh-meh-shee-ah-gah-ree deh-soo kah.	Will you be dining here?
Kashikomarimashita!	kah-shee-koh-mah-ree-mah-shee-tah!	Certainly!
Go-chūmon wa.	goh-chooo-mohn wah.	Your order?
O-nomimono wa.	oh-noh-mee-moh-noh wah.	Anything to drink?

Making a reservation

Japanese often line up in front of the most-popular restaurants, and they don't mind waiting for an hour or more. But if you don't want to wait in line, make a reservation over the phone.

Japanese say *to make a reservation* by saying *to do a reservation*, which is **yoyaku o suru** (yoh-yah-koo oh soo-roo). **Yoyaku** is a noun, so all you have to worry about is the **suru** part. Remember that **suru** is an irregular verb as you check out these conjugations:

<i>Japanese Script</i>	<i>Rōmaji</i>	<i>Pronunciation</i>
予約をする	yoyaku o suru	yoh-yah-koo oh soo-roo
予約をしない	yoyaku o shinai	yoh-yah-koo oh shee-nah-ee
予約をし (ます)	yoyaku o shi(masu)	yoh-yah-koo oh shee(-mah-soo)
予約をして	yoyaku o shite	yoh-yah-koo oh shee-teh



To say you *want* to make a reservation, add **-tai** (tah-ee) at the end of the stem form of this verb: **yoyaku shi-tai** (yoh-yah-koo shee-tah-ee). See Chapter 12 for information on using **-tai**.

To make a reservation, first let the restaurant's host or hostess know when you want to arrive. Table 9-1 shows you how to pronounce the basic time ranges that you're most likely to need for making your dinner reservation. (For the basics of how to tell time in Japanese, including the concepts of *a.m.*, *p.m.*, and *o'clock*, turn to Chapter 5.)

Table 9-1 Reservation Time

<i>Time</i>	<i>Japanese</i>	<i>Pronunciation</i>
6:00	6 時 <i>roku-ji</i>	roh-koo-jee
6:15	6 時 1 5 分 <i>roku-ji jūgo-fun</i>	roh-koo-jee jooo-goh-foon
6:30	6 時半 <i>roku-ji han</i>	roh-koo-jee hahn
6:45	6 時 4 5 分 <i>roku-ji yonjūgo-fun</i>	roh-koo-jee yohn-jooo-goh-foon
7:00	7 時 <i>shichi-ji</i>	shee-chee-jee
8:00	8 時 <i>hachi-ji</i>	hah-chee-jee
9:00	9 時 <i>ku-ji</i>	koo-jee



When you talk about an approximate time, add **goro** (goh-roh) after the time phrase. **Roku-ji goro** (roh-koo-jee goh-roh) means *about 6:00*, and **roku-ji han goro** (roh-koo-jee hahn goh-roh) means *about 6:30*.

After you establish a reservation time, let the restaurant know how many people are in your party by using a counter. *Counters* are short suffixes that directly follow numbers. As I explain in Chapter 5, the counter you use depends on the item you’re counting. So you can’t just say **go** (goh) (*five*) when you have five people in your party. You have to say **go-nin** (goh-neen) because **-nin** (neen) is the counter for people. But watch out for the irregular **hitori** (hee-toh-ree) (*one*), **futari** (foo-tah-ree) (*two*), and **yonin** (yoh-neen) (*four*).

Talkin’ the Talk



Makoto Tanaka is trying to make a reservation at Fuguichi, a blowfish restaurant, over the phone. (Track 20)

Hostess: **Maido arigatō gozaimasu. Fuguichi de gozaimasu.**
mah-ee-doh ah-ree-gah-tohh goh-zah-ee-mah-soo.
foo-goo-ee-chee deh goh-zah-ee-mah-soo.
Thank you for calling. (Literally: Thank you for your patronage). This is Fuguichi. How can I help you?

Makoto: **Anō, konban, yoyaku o shitai-n-desu ga.**
ah-nohh, kohn-bahn, yoh-yah-koo oh shee-tah-een-deh-soo gah.
I’d like to make a reservation for tonight.

Hostess: **Hai, arigatō gozaimasu. Nan-ji goro.**
hah-ee, ah-ree-gah-tohh goh-zah-ee-mah-soo. nahnn-jee goh-roh.
Yes, thank you. About what time?

Makoto: **Shichi-ji ni onegai shimasu.**
shee-chee-jee nee oh-neh-gah-ee shee-mah-soo.
7:00, please.

Hostess: **Hai. Nan-nin-sama.**
hah-ee. nahnn-neen-sah-mah.
Certainly. How many people?

Makoto: **Go-nin desu.**
goh-neen deh-soo.
Five people.

- Hostess: **Hai, kashikomarimashita. O-namae wa.**
 hah-ee, kah-shee-koh-mah-reh-mah-shee-tah. oh-nah-mah-eh wa.
Certainly. Your name?
- Makoto: **Fuji Bōeki no Tanaka desu.**
 foo-jee bohh-eh-kee noh tah-nah-kah deh-soo.
I'm Tanaka from Fuji Trade Company.
- Hostess: **Fuji Bōeki no Tanaka-sama de gozaimasu ne.**
 foo-jee bohh-eh-kee noh tah-nah-kah-sah-mah deh goh-zah-ee-mah-soo neh.
Mr. Tanaka from Fuji Trade Company. Is that correct?
- Makoto: **Hai.**
 hah-ee.
 Yes.
- Hostess: **Dewa, shichi-ji ni o-machi shite orimasu.**
 deh-wah, shee-chee-jee nee oh-mah-chee shee-teh oh-ree-mah-soo.
Then we'll be expecting you at 7:00.
- Makoto: **Hai. Yoroshiku.**
 hah-ee. yoh-roh-shee-koo.
 Yes. *Thank you.*

Words to Know

<i>Maido arigatō gozaimasu.</i>	<i>mah-ee-doh ah-ree-gah-tohh goh-zah-ee-mah-soo.</i>	<i>Thank you for your patronage.</i>
<i>de gozaimasu</i>	<i>deh goh-zah-ee-mah-soo</i>	<i>to be (honorific)</i>
<i>konban</i>	<i>kohn-bahn</i>	<i>tonight</i>
<i>yoyaku (o) suru</i>	<i>yoh-yah-koo (oh) soo-roo</i>	<i>to make a reservation</i>
<i>Shichi-ji ni o-machi shite orimasu.</i>	<i>shee-chee-jee nee oh-mah-chee shee-teh oh-ree-mah-soo.</i>	<i>We'll be expecting you at 7:00.</i>

Eating blowfish carefully

For a long time, Japanese have admired ふぐ **fugu** (foo-goo) (*blowfish*) as the most delicious fish. The only problem: It's poisonous — or at least the ovaries and liver are especially poisonous. If the person preparing **fugu** accidentally slices into either of those two places, eating the **fugu** can kill you. People in Japan have actually died because of improper preparation of **fugu** by unlicensed chefs.

That's why only trained and licensed chefs are legally permitted to cut, clean, and serve **fugu**.

They remove the dangerous parts and wash the remaining portion of the fish very carefully, using a tremendous amount of water.

Fugu is one of the most expensive delicacies in Japan and costs about \$200 for a single fish. Japanese are truly gourmets. They seek out exquisite tastes, risking their lives and paying a fortune in the process.



In Japanese, you often form a statement using **-n-desu** (n-deh-soo) in conversation, as Makoto does in the preceding Talkin' the Talk. The effect of **-n-desu** is to encourage your partner to respond to your statements. See Chapter 5 for more about **n-desu**.



Japanese say **yoroshiku** (yoh-roh-shee-koo) after asking a favor of someone or after making a request, such as a reservation at a restaurant. In this context, it means *Please take good care of it for me*. You don't say anything like that in English, so just think of it as *thank you*. **Yoroshiku** is one of those phrases that you have to use your intuition and cultural understanding rather than translations to understand. But if you can use it appropriately, you'll really sound like a native Japanese speaker!

Ordering in a restaurant

How do you order in a restaurant (that is, the kind where the food comes to your table)? Whether you go to a four-star establishment or the corner pub, your waiter or waitress will ask you questions like the following:

- ✓ ご注文は。 **Gochūmon wa.** (goh-chooo-mohn wah.) (*Your order?*)
- ✓ 何になさいますか。 **Nani ni nasaimasu ka.** (nah-nee nee nah-sah-ee-mah-soo kah.) (*What will you have?*)
- ✓ お飲み物は。 **O-nomimono wa.** (oh-noh-mee-moh-noh wah.) (*Anything to drink?*)

Following are some phrases you can use to help you place your order:

- ✓ メニューをお願いします。 **Menyū o onegai shimasu.** (meh-nyooo oh oh-neh-gah-ee shee-mah-soo.) (*Menu, please.*)
- ✓ ラーメンを三つお願いします。 **Rāmen o mittsu onegaishimasu.** (rahh-mehn oh meet-tsoo oh-neh-gah-ee-shee-mah-soo.) (*Can we have ramen noodles for three please?*)
- ✓ すしと刺し身と味噌汁をお願いします。 **Sushi to sashimi to misoshiru o onegaishimasu.** (soo-shee toh sah-shee-mee toh mee-soh-shee-roo oh oh-neh-gah-ee-shee-mah-soo.) (*Can I have sushi, sashimi, and miso soup please?*)
- ✓ ワインはありますか。 **Wain wa arimasu ka.** (wah-een wah ah-ree-mah-soo kah.) (*Do you have wine?*)
- ✓ 私はステーキを下さい。 **Watashi wa sutēki o kudasai.** (wah-tah-shee wah soo-tehh-kee oh koo-dah-sah-ee.) (*Can I have steak please?*)
- ✓ 私はラザニアをお願いします。 **Watashi wa razania o onegaishimasu.** (wah-tah-shee wah rah-zah-nee-ah oh oh-neh-gah-ee-shee-mah-soo.) (*Can I have lasagne please?*)
- ✓ 今日のスペシャルは。 **Kyō no supesharu wa.** (kyohh noh soo-peh-shah-roo wah.) (*Today's special?*)



To list several dishes, use **to** (toh) between each dish to link them. Think of **to** as a verbal comma or the word *and*.

To specify the quantity of each item that you want to order, use **-tsu**, the counter that applies to food items — **hito-tsū** (hee-toh-tsoo) (*one*), **futa-tsū** (foo-tah-tsoo) (*two*), **mit-tsū** (meet-tsoo) (*three*), and so forth. (See Chapter 5 for a more in-depth explanation of counters.)

Are you going to eat some of the following today?

- ✓ ビーフステーキ **bīfu sutēki** (beeee-foo soo-tehh-kee) (*beef steak*)
- ✓ ビーフシチュー **bīfu shichū** (beeee-foo shee-chooo) (*beef stew*)
- ✓ 牛丼 **gyūdon** (gyooo-dohn) (*a bowl of rice topped with cooked beef and vegetables*)
- ✓ マッシュポテト **masshu poteto** (mas-shoo poh-teh-toh) (*mashed potato*)
- ✓ ミートローフ **mito rōfu** (meee-toh rohh-foo) (*meatloaf*)
- ✓ 親子丼 **oyako donburi** (oh-yah-koh dohn-boo-ree) (*a bowl of rice topped with cooked chicken and eggs*)
- ✓ サラダ **sarada** (sah-rah-dah) (*salad*)

- ✓ スープ sūpu (sooo-poo) (soup)
- ✓ スパゲッティ supagetti (soo-pah-geht-tee) (spaghetti)
- ✓ てんぷら tempura (tehn-poo-rah) (tempura, deep-fried and battered vegetables or seafood)
- ✓ とんかつ tonkatsu (tohn-kah-tsoo) (pork cutlet)
- ✓ 鰻 unagi (oo-nah-gee) (eel)
- ✓ 焼き肉 yakiniku (yah-kee-nee-koo) (Korean-style barbecue)



If you want to have a complete meal that comes with rice, soup, and a salad, order a **teishoku** (tehh-shoh-koo) (*set meal*), like **sashimi teishoku** and **tempura teishoku**.

Wondering what to do if you can't read the Japanese menu at a restaurant? Don't worry. Most restaurants in Japan have colored pictures on the menus or life-sized wax models of the food in their windows. The easiest way to order food is to follow this simple formula: Say **watashi wa** (wah-tah-shee wah) (*as for me*), point to the picture of the dish on the menu, say **kore o** (koh-reh oh) (*this one* plus direct object particle), and say **onegaishimasu** (oh-neh-gah-ee-shee-mah-soo) (*I'd like to ask you*) or **kudasai** (koo-dah-sah-ee) (*please give me*) at the end.

Talkin' the Talk



Ken and Akiko are going to place an order at a restaurant inside the Tokyo station. (Track 21)

Server: **Nani ni nasaimasu ka.**
 nah-nee nee nah-sah-ee-mah-soo kah.
 What would you like to have?

Ken: **Boku wa sashimi teishoku.**
 boh-koo wah sah-shee-mee teishoku.
 I'll have the sashimi set.

Server: **O-nomimono wa.**
 oh-noh-mee-moh-noh wa.
 How about something to drink?

Ken: **Bīru.**
 beeee-roo.
 Beer.

- Server: **Hai, kashikomarimashita. O-kyaku-sama wa?**
 hah-ee, kah-shee-koh-mah-ree-mah-shee-tah. oh-kyah-koo-sah-mah wah.
Sure, certainly. How about you? (Literally: How about the customer?)
- Akiko: **Watashi wa tempura teishoku o onegai shimasu.**
 wah-tah-shee wa tehn-poo-rah tehh-shoh-koo oh oh-neh-gah-ee shee-mah-soo.
I'll have the tempura set.
- Server: **O-nomimono wa.**
 oh-noh-mee-moh-noh wah.
How about something to drink?
- Akiko: **Île, ii desu.**
 eee-eh, eee deh-soo.
No, thank you.
- Server: **Hai, sashimi teishoku ga o-hitotsu, tempura teishoku ga o-hitotsu, bîru ga o-hitotsu desu ne.**
 hah-ee, sah-shee-mee tehh-shoh-koo-gah oh-hee-toh-tssoo, tehn-poo-rah tehh-shoh-koo gah oh-hee-toh-tssoo, beeee-roo gah oh-hee-toh-tssoo deh-soo neh.
Yes, certainly. So, one sashimi set, one tempura set, and one beer, right?
- Ken and Akiko: **Hai.**
 hah-ee.
 Yes.

Words to Know

Nani ni nasaimasu ka.	nah-nee nee nah-sah-ee-mah-soo kah.	What would you like to have?
teishoku	tehh-shoh-koo	set menu
O-nomimono wa.	oh-noh-mee-moh-noh wah.	How about something to drink?
o-kyaku-sama	oh-kyah-koo-sah-mah	customer
o-hitotsu	oh-hee-toh-tssoo	one (honorific)

Chatting with the waiter or waitress

At some point, you may need to ask your server questions or give him or her feedback on your food. Here are some phrases to help you do those very things:

- ✓ ちょっと変な味です。 **Chotto henna aji desu.** (choh-toh hehn-nah ah-jee-deh-soo.) (*It tastes sort of strange.*)
- ✓ これは何ですか。 **Kore wa nan desu ka.** (koh-reh wah nahm deh-soo kah.) (*What is this?*)
- ✓ これは焼けていますか。 **Kore wa yakete imasu ka.** (koh-reh wah yah-keh-teh ee-mah-soo kah.) (*Is it well done?*)
- ✓ おいしいですね。 **Oishii desu ne.** (oh-ee-sheee deh-soo neh.) (*It's delicious, isn't it?*)
- ✓ お水を下さい。 **O-mizu o kudasai.** (oh-mee-zoo oh koo-dah-sah-ee.) (*Water, please.*)
- ✓ お手洗いはどこですか。 **O-tearai wa doko desu ka.** (oh-teh-ah-rah-ee wah doh-koh deh-soo kah.) (*Where is the bathroom?*)
- ✓ とてもおいしかったです。 **Totemo oishikatta desu!** (toh-teh-moh oh-ee-shee-kaht-tah deh-soo!) (*That was very delicious!*)



To express what you can and what you can't eat, use the verb **taberu** (tah-beh-roo) (*to eat*) in the potential form: **taberaremasu** (tah-beh-rah-reh-mah-soo) (*I can eat*) and **taberaremasen** (tah-beh-rah-reh-mah-sehn) (*I can't eat*). For example, **Watashi wa ebi ga taberaremasen.** (wah-tah-shee wah eh-bee gah tah-beh-rah-reh-mah-sehn.) (*I can't eat shrimp.*) Head to Chapter 13 for details on the potential form.

Paying for your meal

When and how you pay for your meal can vary by restaurant. You may have to pay upfront, or you may be able to pay after eating. Most restaurants accept **kurejitto kādo** (koo-reh-jeet-toh kahh-doh) (*credit cards*), but many of them still only accept **genkin** (gehn-keen) (*cash*), especially in smaller cities and rural areas. Clarifying these details before eating is your best bet. Then all you have to do is request your bill. Here are the phrases you need to know:

- ✓ 別々にお願いします。 **Betsubetsu ni onegai shimasu.** (beh-tssoo-beh-tssoo nee oh-neh-gah-ee shee-mah-soo.) (*Please give us separate checks.*)
- ✓ チェックお願ひします。 **Chekku onegai shimasu.** (chehk-koo oh-neh-gah-ee shee-mah-soo.) (*Check please.*)



✓ 一緒にお願ひします。 **Isshoni onegai shimasu.** (ees-shoh-nee oh-neh-gah-ee shee-mah-soo.) (*Please give us one check.*)

✓ 領収書お願ひします。 **Ryōshūsho onegai shimasu.** (ryohh-shooo-shoh oh-neh-gah-ee shee-mah-soo.) (*Receipt please.*)

You don't have to tip at any restaurant in Japan, but you still get very good service about 99 percent of the time. For very expensive meals, the restaurant warns the customers, in writing, that the tip is automatically included in their bill as a **sābisuryō** (sahh-bee-soo-ryohh) (*service fee*). So you still don't have to think about offering a voluntary gratuity.

Going Grocery Shopping

Restaurants are great, but if you want to save time and money, go shopping for your food. If you go to a supermarket, you can get most of the items you need in one trip, including the following:

- ✓ アイスクリーム **aisukurīmu** (ah-ee-soo-koo-reeee-moo) (*ice cream*)
- ✓ バター **batā** (bah-tahh) (*butter*)
- ✓ チーズ **chīzu** (cheee-zoo) (*cheese*)
- ✓ 牛乳 **gyūnyū** (gyooo-nyooo) (*milk*)
- ✓ ジュース **jūsu** (jooo-soo) (*juice*)
- ✓ 米 **kome** (koh-me) (*uncooked rice*)
- ✓ 果物 **kudamono** (koo-dah-moh-noh) (*fruits*)
- ✓ 肉 **niku** (nee-koo) (*meat*)
- ✓ パン **pan** (pahn) (*bread*)
- ✓ 魚 **sakana** (sah-kah-nah) (*fish*)
- ✓ たまご **tamago** (tah-mah-goh) (*eggs*)
- ✓ 野菜 **yasai** (yah-sah-ee) (*vegetables*)

Going to a butcher

Whether your butcher has a special shop or just works behind the counter at a regular grocery store, he or she can be a meat-eater's best friend. Here are some of the meats you can get from a butcher:

- ✓ 豚肉 **butaniku** (boo-tah-nee-koo) (*pork*)
- ✓ 牛肉 **gyūniku** (gyooo-nee-koo) (*beef*)
- ✓ マトン **maton** (mah-tohn) (*mutton*)
- ✓ 七面鳥 **shichimenchō** (shee-chee-mehn-chohh) (*turkey*)
- ✓ 鶏肉 **toriniku** (toh-ree-nee-koo) (*chicken*)

Processed, cured, and cooked meats are very convenient. If you need to whip up a quick dinner, you may want to buy one of these:

- ✓ ベーコン **bēkon** (behh-kohn) (*bacon*)
- ✓ ハム **hamu** (hah-moo) (*ham*)
- ✓ コーンビーフ **kōn bīfu** (kohhn beeee-foo) (*corned beef*)
- ✓ ローストビーフ **rōsuto bīfu** (rohh-soo-toh beeee-foo) (*roast beef*)
- ✓ ソーセージ **sōsēji** (sohh-sehh-jee) (*sausage*)

Purchasing fresh fish

Japanese are big fish-eaters. If you're also a fish lover, the fish market is the place for you. The names of fish are often written in **katakana** at the fish market (and in the following list), but some are also written in **kanji** or **hiragana**. Remember the names of your favorite fish when you make the trip:

- ✓ ハマチ **hamachi** (hah-mah-chee) (*yellowtail*)
- ✓ ヒラメ **hirame** (hee-rah-meh) (*flounder*)
- ✓ マグロ **maguro** (mah-goo-roh) (*tuna*)
- ✓ マス **masu** (mah-soo) (*trout*)
- ✓ サバ **saba** (sah-bah) (*mackerel*)
- ✓ サケ **sake** (sah-keh) (*salmon*)
- ✓ スズキ **suzuki** (soo-zoo-kee) (*Japanese sea bass*)
- ✓ タイ **tai** (tah-ee) (*red snapper*)
- ✓ タラ **tara** (tah-rah) (*cod*)



If you go to Japan, try buying fresh fish at the **Tsukiji** (tsoo-kee-jee) Market. It's the largest and most famous fish market in Tokyo, and it's always crowded with professional fresh-fish buyers and sellers. Major sushi restaurants in

Tokyo buy fish directly from Tsukiji. There's no room in the market for formality, and everyone is friendly. If you're interested visiting Tsukiji, go early because it's busiest before 8 a.m. and starts closing down in the late morning.

Buying vegetables and fruit

Include some of the following vegetables and fruits on your shopping list. Some are always written in **katakana** (as I've done in the following list), but others are written in **katakana**, **hiragana**, or **kanji**. Regardless of the Japanese script used, these items are good for you:

- ✓ バナナ **banana** (bah-nah-nah) (*bananas*)
- ✓ ブドウ **budō** (boo-dohh) (*grapes*)
- ✓ ダイコン **daikon** (dah-ee-kohn) (*Japanese radish*)
- ✓ ジャガイモ **jagaimo** (jah-gah-ee-moh) (*potatoes*)
- ✓ カキ **kaki** (kah-kee) (*persimmons*)
- ✓ キャベツ **kyabetsu** (kyah-beh-tsoo) (*cabbage*)
- ✓ ミカン **mikan** (mee-kahn) (*tangerines*)
- ✓ ナシ **nashi** (nah-shee) (*pears*)
- ✓ ナス **nasu** (nah-soo) (*eggplant*)
- ✓ ネギ **negi** (neh-gee) (*green onions*)
- ✓ ニンジン **ninjin** (neen-jeen) (*carrots*)
- ✓ ピーマン **pīman** (peee-mahn) (*green peppers*)
- ✓ レモン **remon** (reh-mohn) (*lemons*)
- ✓ レタス **retasu** (reh-tah-soo) (*lettuce*)
- ✓ リンゴ **ringo** (reen-goh) (*apples*)
- ✓ サツマイモ **satsumaimo** (sah-tssoo-mah-ee-moh) (*sweet potatoes*)
- ✓ スイカ **suika** (soo-ee-kah) (*watermelon*)
- ✓ タマネギ **tamanegi** (tah-mah-neh-gee) (*round onions*)
- ✓ トマト **tomato** (toh-mah-toh) (*tomatoes*)
- ✓ イチゴ **ichigo** (ee-chee-goh) (*strawberries*)



Fun & Games

You're about to go to the supermarket to get the following items. Match each illustration to one of the Japanese words in the list. Then turn to Appendix D for the answers.

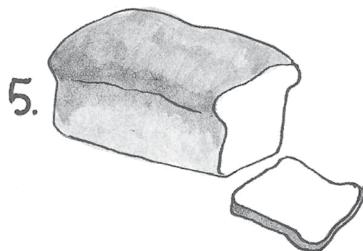
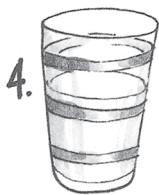
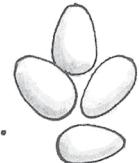
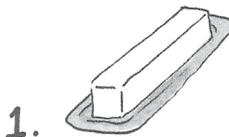


Illustration by Elizabeth Kurtzman

- a. チーズ chīzu
- b. たまご tamago
- c. バター batā
- d. パン pan
- e. 牛乳 gyūnyū

Chapter 10

Shopping Made Easy

In This Chapter

- ▶ Specifying what you're searching for
- ▶ Knowing what's where in the department store
- ▶ Trying and buying clothes
- ▶ Comparing items
- ▶ Coughing up the cash

I love **kaimono** (kah-ee-moh-noh) (*shopping*). When I feel great, I shop. When I feel depressed, I shop. And when I get a raise — you guessed it — I shop. If you love shopping too, this chapter is for you. It's full of the information and vocabulary you need to know if you're going to go shopping. Specifically, you discover how to explain what you're looking for, how to compare both prices and quality in Japanese, and how to pay for your merchandise.

Naming Shops and Stores

You can refer to some types of shops and stores using the suffix **ya** (yah) (*shop*) in a friendly manner. For example:

- ✓ 花屋 **hana-ya** (hah-nah-yah) (*flower shop*)
- ✓ 本屋 **hon-ya** (hohn-yah) (*bookstore*)
- ✓ 自転車屋 **jitensha-ya** (jee-tahn-shah-yah) (*bicycle shop*)
- ✓ 薬屋 **kusuri-ya** (koo-soo-ree-yah) (*drugstore*)
- ✓ 靴屋 **kutsu-ya** (koo-tssoo-yah) (*shoe store*)
- ✓ おもちゃ屋 **omocha-ya** (oh-moh-cha-yah) (*toy store*)
- ✓ パン屋 **pan-ya** (pahn-yah) (*bakery*)
- ✓ 酒屋 **saka-ya** (sah-kah-yah) (*liquor shop*)

Some stores are conventionally referred to by English loan words with some modifications. Here are a few examples:

- ✓ ブティック **butikku** (boo-teek-koo) (*boutique*)
- ✓ デパート **depāto** (deh-pahh-toh) (*department store*)
- ✓ ホームセンター **hōmusentā** (hohh-moo-sehn-tahh) (*home center, home improvement store*)
- ✓ コンビニ **konbini** (kohn-bee-nee) (*convenience store*)
- ✓ スーパー **sūpā** (sooo-pahh) (*supermarket*)

Telling a Salesperson What You're Looking For

If you have a particular item in mind, step into a store and say the name of the item and **wa arimasu ka** (wah ah-ree-mah-soo kah) (*do you have*). Or you can use the **u**-verb **sagasu** (sah-gah-soo) (*to look for*) to state that you're looking for, for example, **furoshiki** (foo-roh-shee-kee). (These big, smooth, square Japanese wrapping cloths have beautiful patterns and colors.) Here's how to conjugate **sagasu**:

<i>Japanese Script</i>	<i>Rōmaji</i>	<i>Pronunciation</i>
探す	sagasu	sah-gah-soo
探さない	sagasanai	sah-gah-sah-nah-ee
探し (ます)	sagashi(masu)	sah-gah-shee(-mah-soo)
探して	sagashite	sah-gah-shee-teh



If you say **sagasu** or **sagashimasu**, it means you *will* look for something or you *regularly* look for something. In order to mean that you *are* looking for something, conjugate the verb **sagasu** to the **te**-form, which is **sagashite** (sah-gah-shee-teh), and then add the verb **iru** (ee-roo) or its polite form **imasu** (ee-mah-soo) (*to exist*). **Sagashite iru** or **sagashite imasu** means you are looking for something. (For more on basic verb forms such as the **te**-form, see Chapter 3.)



If you're traveling in Japan, perhaps you have some specific souvenirs in mind that you know you want to pick up. Visit the fun and friendly souvenir shops in **Kyōto** (kyohh-toh), **Nara** (nah-rah), and **Asakusa** (ah-sah-koo-sah), where you can say that you're looking for the following popular souvenirs:

- ✓ 茶碗 **chawan** (chah-wahn) (*rice bowl, teacup that's wider than it is tall and used for tea ceremonies*)
- ✓ 風呂敷 **furoshiki** (foo-roh-shee-kee) (*wrapping cloths*)
- ✓ 下駄 **geta** (geh-tah) (*type of wooden clogs*)

- ✓ 箸 **hashi** (hah-shee) (*chopsticks*)
- ✓ 花瓶 **kabin** (kah-been) (*vase*)
- ✓ 傘 **kasa** (kah-sah) (*umbrella*)
- ✓ 着物 **kimono** (kee-moh-noh) (*kimono*)
- ✓ くし **kushi** (koo-shee) (*comb*)
- ✓ 人形 **ningyō** (neen-gyohh) (*doll [for display only]*)
- ✓ お茶 **o-cha** (oh-chah) (*green tea*)
- ✓ 折り紙 **origami** (oh-ree-gah-mee) (*origami*)
- ✓ お皿 **o-sara** (oh-sah-rah) (*plate*)
- ✓ せんべい **senbei** (sehn-behh) (*rice cracker*)
- ✓ 扇子 **sensu** (sehn-soo) (*fan*)
- ✓ 湯飲み **yunomi** (yoo-noh-mee) (*teacup that's taller than it is wide and used for drinking regular green tea*)



Express your request by using a verb in the **te-form** (see Chapter 3) and **kudasai** (koo-dah-sah-ee) as in the following examples:

その花瓶を見せてください。 **Sono kabin o misete kudasai.** (soh-noh kah-been oh mee-seh-teh koo-dah-sah-ee.) (*Please show me that vase.*)

この茶碗を包んでください。 **Kono chawan o tsutsunde kudasai.** (koh-noh chah-wahn oh tsoo-tsoon-deh koo-dah-sah-ee.) (*Please wrap this teacup.*)

Talkin' the Talk



Joan wants to buy a Japanese souvenir and steps into a souvenir store in Asakusa. (Track 22)

Joan: **Sumimasen. Furoshiki wa arimasu ka.**
 soo-mee-mah-sehn. foo-roh-shee-kee wah ah-ree-mah-soo kah.
 Excuse me. Do you have furoshiki?

Clerk: **Furoshiki wa arimasen.**
 foo-roh-shee-kee wah ah-ree-mah-sehn.
 Furoshiki? We don't have it.

Joan: **Ā, sō desu ka. Jā, sono sensu o chotto misete kudasai.**
 ahh, sohh deh-soo kah. jahh, soh-noh sehn-soo oh choht-toh mee-seh-teh koo-dah-sah-ee.
 Oh, I see. Then could you show me that fan please?

Clerk: **Kore desu ka.**
koh-reh deh-soo kah.
This one?

Joan: **Hai.**
hah-ee.
Yes.

Clerk: **Dōzo.**
dohh-zo.
Here you are.

Words to Know

furoshiki	foo-roh-shee-kee	wrapping cloths
wa arimasu ka	wah ah-ree-mah-soo kah	do you have
sono	soh-noh	that
sensu	sehn-soo	fan
Misete kudasai.	mee-seh-teh koo-dah- sah ee.	Please show it to me.
kore	koh-reh	this one

Exploring the Variety of a Department Store

Depāto (deh-pahh-toh) (*department stores*) are very convenient. Their **nedan** (neh-dahn) (*prices*) are a little high, but they offer a variety of quality items and **burandohin** (boo-rahn-doh-heen) (*designer-brand items*). They also offer good **sābisu** (sahh-bee-soo) (*service*), I suppose. You can find the following items in a **depāto**:

- ✓ 婦人服 **fujinfuku** (foo-jeen-foo-koo) (*women's clothes*)
- ✓ 楽器 **gakki** (gahk-kee) (*musical instruments*)
- ✓ 宝石 **hōseki** (hohh-seh-kee) (*jewelry*)
- ✓ 鞄 **kaban** (kah-bahn) (*luggage*)

- ✓ 家具 **kagu** (kah-goo) (*furniture*)
- ✓ 化粧品 **keshōhin** (keh-shohh-heen) (*cosmetics*)
- ✓ 子供服 **kodomofuku** (koh-doh-moh-foo-koo) (*children's clothes*)
- ✓ 靴 **kutsu** (koo-tsoo) (*shoes*)
- ✓ 紳士服 **shinshifuku** (sheen-shee-foo-koo) (*men's clothes*)
- ✓ 書籍 **shoseki** (shoh-seh-kee) (*books*)
- ✓ スポーツ用品 **supōtsu yōhin** (soo-pohh-tsoo yohh-heen) (*sporting goods*)



Which floor do you want to go to? To answer this question, use the counter **-kai**. For example, **2-kai** (nee-kah-ee) means *second floor*. For more info on Japanese counters, see Chapter 5.

Store clerks speak very politely. One of the polite phrases that they often use is **de gozaimasu** (deh goh-zah-ee-mah-soo). It's a polite version of the verb **desu** (deh-soo) (*to be*). So instead of saying **Hōseki wa nana-kai desu.** (hohh-seh-kee wah nah-nah-kah-ee deh-soo.) (*Jewelry is on the seventh floor.*), they say **Hōseki wa nana-kai de gozaimasu.** (hohh-seh-kee wah nah-nah-kah-ee deh goh-zah-ee-mah-soo.).

Department stores have fixed business hours. Before you head out shopping, you can find out a department store's hours by asking **Eigyō jikan wa nan-ji kara nan-ji made desu ka.** (ehhh-gyohh jee-kahn wah nahn-jee kah-rah nahn-jee mah-deh deh-soo kah.) (*From what time to what time are your business hours?*). If you're already at the store and you want to ask *What time does your store close?* say **Heiten wa nan-ji desu ka.** (hehh-tehn wah nahn-jee deh-soo kah.)

Going Clothes Shopping

When you go shopping for **yōfuku** (yohh-foo-koo) (*clothes*) do you look for quality items that you can wear for years, or do you buy cheap items that you just wear for one season? Whatever your approach, check out the following sections to make sure you get just what you want.

Considering the clothing and accessories you need

Some pieces of clothing are staples. For example, you pretty much always need **shitagi** (shee-tah-gee) (*underwear*). Other clothing items and accessories, such as a **nekkuresu** (nehk-koo-reh-soo) (*necklace*), are fun to have but won't cause your wardrobe to fall apart if you don't own them. Check out the following list of clothes and accessories:

- ✓ ベルト **beruto** (beh-roo-toh) (*belt*)
- ✓ 帽子 **bōshi** (bohh-shee) (*cap, hat*)
- ✓ ブラジャー **burajā** (boo-rah-jahh) (*bra*)
- ✓ ブリーフ **burīfu** (boo-reeee-foo) (*briefs, men's underwear*)
- ✓ ドレス **doresu** (doh-reh-soo) (*dress*)
- ✓ ジャケット **jaketto** (jah-keht-toh) (*jacket*)
- ✓ ジーンズ **jīnzu** (jeeen-zoo) (*jeans*)
- ✓ コート **kōto** (kohh-toh) (*coat*)
- ✓ 靴 **kutsu** (koo-tsoo) (*shoes*)
- ✓ 靴下 **kutsushita** (koo-tsoo-shee-tah) (*socks*)
- ✓ ネクタイ **nekutai** (neh-koo-tah-ee) (*necktie*)
- ✓ サングラス **sangurasu** (sahn-goo-rah-soo) (*sunglasses*)
- ✓ セーター **sētā** (sehh-tahh) (*sweater*)
- ✓ シャツ **shatsu** (shah-tsoo) (*shirt*)
- ✓ スカート **sukāto** (soo-kahh-toh) (*skirt*)
- ✓ スーツ **sūtsu** (sooo-tsoo) (*suit*)
- ✓ スニーカー **sunikā** (soo-neeee-kaha) (*sneakers*)
- ✓ トランクス **torankusu** (toh-rahn-koo-soo) (*boxers, men's underwear*)
- ✓ ズボン **zubon** (zoo-bohn) (*pants*)

Examining the color

What's your favorite **iro** (ee-roh) (*color*)? When you buy clothes, check out all the colors and pick the one that looks best on you.

- ✓ 赤 **aka** (ah-kah) (*red*)
- ✓ 青 **ao** (ah-oh) (*blue*)
- ✓ 茶色 **chairo** (chah-ee-roh) (*brown*)
- ✓ 黄色 **kiiro** (keeee-roh) (*yellow*)
- ✓ 黒 **kuro** (koo-roh) (*black*)
- ✓ 緑 **midori** (mee-doh-ree) (*green*)
- ✓ 紫 **murasaki** (moo-rah-sah-kee) (*purple*)
- ✓ オレンジ **orenji** (oh-rehn-jee) (*orange*)



- ✓ ピンク pinku (peen-koo) (*pink*)
- ✓ 白 shiro (shee-roh) (*white*)

You can just add the particle **no** (noh) after nouns and adjectives to mean *a . . . one*. For example, **aka no** (ah-kah noh) means *a red one*.

茶色のはありますか。 **Chairo no wa arimasu ka.** (chah-ee-roh noh wah ah-ree-mah-soo kah.) (*Do you have a brown one?*)

色がきれいなのを探しています。 **Iro ga kirei na no o sagashite imasu.** (ee-roh gah kee-rehh na noh oh sah-gah-shee-teh ee-mah-soo.) (*I'm looking for something with a pretty color.*)

Trying something on

When you need to get permission to do something, start with **chotto** (choht-toh), a word with far more uses than a dictionary can suggest. The English translation is usually *a little*, but you hear it in situations where no literal translation works. You can think of the phrase **chotto kite mite mo ii desu ka** (choht-toh kee-teh mee-teh moh eee deh-sooo kah) as having a meaning close to *Can I try it on for a minute?* (Literally: *Can I try it on a little?*). In this context, **chotto** makes it sound as if you'll be done as soon as possible.



When you want to try doing something, use the verb in the **te-form** and add **miru**. For example, **tabete miru** (tah-beh-teh mee-roo) means *to try eating*. **Kite miru** (kee-teh mee-roo) means *to try wearing* or *to try on*.

Ask for permission by using the verb in the **te-form** (see Chapter 3) with the phrase **mo ii desu ka** (moh eee deh-soo kah). For example, **Kite mite mo ii desu ka.** (kee-teh mee-teh moh eee deh-soo kah.) means *Is it okay to try it on?*

After you have the okay to try on a piece of clothing, head to the **shichakushitsu** (shee-chah-koo-shee-tsoo) (*fitting room*). Use the following phrases to express what you think of the outfit:

- ✓ 丁度いいです。 **Chōdo ii desu.** (chohh-doh eee deh-soo.) (*It's just right.*)
- ✓ ちょっと小さいです。 **chotto chīsai desu** (choht-toh cheee-sah-ee deh-soo) (*a little small*)
- ✓ ちょっと大きいかな。 **Chotto ōkii kana.** (choht-toh ohh-keee kah-nah.) (*Is it a little big for me?*)
- ✓ 長いです。 **Nagai desu.** (nah-gah-ee deh-soo.) (*It's long.*)
- ✓ 少し短いです。 **sukoshi mijikai desu** (soo-koh-shee mee-jee-kah-ee deh-soo) (*a little short*)

Note that the verb **kiru** (kee-roo), which means *to wear*, is a **ru**-verb. Here's how to conjugate it:

<i>Japanese Script</i>	<i>Rōmaji</i>	<i>Pronunciation</i>
着る	kiru	kee-roo
着ない	kinai	kee-nah-ee
着（ます）	ki(masu)	kee(-mah-soo)
着て	kite	kee-teh



Although **kiru** is the most general verb that means *to wear*, you can't use it for everything you wear. It's good only for items you put above your waist, such as sweaters and shirts, or on your entire body, such as long dresses or coats. For items you wear below your waist (think skirts, pants, socks, and shoes), use the verb **haku** (hah-koo). For items you put over your head, such as caps and hats, use **kaburu** (kah-boo-roo). For eyeglasses or sunglasses, use the verb **kakeru** (kah-keh-roo) or **suru** (soo-roo), which means *to do*. For other accessories, use **suru** or **tsukeru** (tsoo-keh-roo) (*to attach*).

Talking about sizing

Trying on clothing is important, but shopping for a T-shirt is pretty easy. You can often avoid going to the fitting room if you know your **saizu** (sah-ee-zoo) (*size*).

- ✓ **S サイズ S saizu** (eh-soo sah-ee-zoo) (*small*)
- ✓ **M サイズ M saizu** (eh-moo sah-ee-zoo) (*medium*)
- ✓ **L サイズ L saizu** (eh-roo sah-ee-zoo) (*large*)
- ✓ **XL サイズ XL saizu** (ehk-koo-soo eh-roo sah-ee-zoo) (*extra large*)

Buying a dress is more complicated than shopping for a T-shirt. Use the counter **-gō** (gohh) when sizing up your choices. (For more info on using Japanese counters and Japanese numbers, check out Chapter 5.)

Women's dress sizes in Japan are three sizes less than they are in America. Here are the rough equivalents for women's dress sizes:

<i>American size</i>	<i>Japanese size</i>
4	7
6	9
8	11
10	13
12	15
14	17
16	19

Men's suit and coat sizes are expressed in letters in Japan. Compare American sizes and Japanese sizes:

American size	Japanese size
34	S
36	S
38	M
40	M
42	L
44	L
46	LL



In Japan, length is specified in metric units. If your waist is **30 inchi** (sahn-jooeen-chee) (**30 inches**), it's **76.2 senchi** (nah-nah-jooo-roh-koo tehn nee sehn-chee) (**76.2 centimeters**). To find your size in centimeters, just multiply your size in inches by 2.54 (1 inch = 2.54 centimeters). Carry a little **dentaku** (dehn-tah-koo) (*calculator*) with you if you shop in Japan.

The particle **ga** (gah) (*but*), as it's used in the following Talkin' the Talk dialogue, connects two contrasting or conflicting sentences. Simply add the particle **ga** (gah) (*but*) at the end of the first sentence as in the following examples.

ジャケットはありますが、ロングコートはありません。 **Jaketto wa ari-masu ga, rongu koto wa arimasen.** (jah-keht-toh wa ah-ree-mah-soo gah, rohn-goo kohh-toh wah ah-ree-mah-sehn.) (*We have jackets, but we don't have long coats.*)

私はアメリカ人ですが、日本語を話します。 **Watashi wa Amerikajin desu ga, Nihongo o hanashimasu.** (wah-tah-shee wah ah-meh-ree-kah-jeen deh-soo gah, nee-hohn-goh oh hah-nah-shee-mah-soo.) (*I'm American, but I speak Japanese.*)

Talkin' the Talk



Lori has found a nice-looking jacket in a store, but she doesn't like the color. She's about to ask the clerk if the store has the same jacket in a different color. (Track 23)

Lori: **Chigau iro wa arimasu ka.**
 chee-gah-oo ee-roh wah ah-ree-mah-soo kah.
 Do you have a different color?

Clerk: **Aka wa arimasu ga, saizu wa S dake desu.**
 ah-kah wah ah-ree-mah-soo gah, sah-ee-zoo wah
 eh-soo dah-keh deh-soo.
 We have red ones, but only small sizes.

Lori: **Chotto kite mite mo ii desu ka.**
 choht-toh kee-teh mee-teh moh eee deh-soo kah.
Can I try it on?

Clerk: **Dōzo.**
 dohh-zo.
Go ahead.

Lori tries on the red jacket.

Lori: **Yappari chotto chīsai desu.**
 yahp-pah-ree choht-toh cheee-sah-ee deh-soo.
As expected, it's a little small.

Clerk: **Jā, midori wa. Midori wa M saizu to L saizu ga ari-masu yo.**
 jahh, mee-doh-ree wah. mee-doh-ree wah eh-moo
 sah-ee-zoo toh eh-roo sah-ee-zoo gah ah-ree-mah-soo yoh.
Then how about green? We have medium and large in green.

Lori tries on a green jacket.

Emi: **Ā, kore wa chōdo ii. Kore o kudasai.**
 ahh, koh-reh wah chohh-doh eee. koh-reh oh
 koo-dah-sah-ee.
Wow, this one fits just right. I'll take this one, please.

Clerk: **Hai.**
 hah-ee.
Okay.

Words to Know

chigau	chee-gah-oo	different, wrong
Kite mite mo ii desu ka.	kee-teh mee-teh moh eee deh-soo kah.	Can I try it on?
yappari	yahp-pah-ree	expectedly
chīsai	cheee-sah-ee	small
chōdo ii	chohh-doh eee	exact fit

Deciding What You Want to Buy

Finding a good deal is impossible without carefully comparing the **shōhin** (shohh-heen) (*merchandise*). When you shop, look at the quality and the functions of the product closely and compare several similar items you’re interested in. Ask yourself which one is better/best.

Making comparisons, grammar-wise, is much easier in Japanese than in English. In English, you need to conjugate the adjective, like *pretty*-*prettier*-*prettiest*, but in Japanese, you don’t have to! **Kirei** (kee-reh-ee) (*pretty*), remains **kirei**; you use other words to make the comparison. The following sections show you how to make different comparisons and get you comfortable using demonstrative adjectives.

Using demonstrative adjectives



If you see a nice item in a store window, ask the clerk to show it to you. How do you specify the item that you want to see? Most of the time, you can point at it with your finger and use the demonstrative pronoun **kore** (koh-reh) (see Chapter 3). But what if a **yunomi** (yoo-noh-mee) (*teacup*) and a **kyūsu** (kyooo-soo) (*teapot*) are right next to each other in the store window, and your finger doesn’t have a laser pointer attached to it? If you say **kore**, the clerk will say **dore** (doh-reh) (*which one?*), and you’ll have to say **kore** again, and the clerk will have to say **dore** again. To end this frustrating and repetitious conversation, change **kore** to **kono** and add the common noun you’re referring to — in this case, **kono yunomi** (koh-noh yoo-noh-mee) (*this teacup*) or **kono kyūsu** (koh-noh kyooo-soo) (*this teapot*).

Similarly, **sore** (soh-reh) (*that one near you*) and **are** (ah-reh) (*that one over there*) become **sono** (soh-noh) and **ano** (ah-noh), respectively, when followed by a common noun. (If you want to know more about **sore** and **are**, check out Chapter 3.) Even the question word **dore** (doh-reh) (*which one*) must become **dono** when followed by a common noun. Wow, too many forms? If you think about it, the change is very systematic: The ending **re** becomes **no**. **Kono**, **sono**, and **ano** are all demonstrative adjectives. **Dono** is their question counterpart. That’s why they’re used with a common noun. Check out Table 10-1’s breakdown of the Japanese demonstrative pronouns and demonstrative adjective as well as the following examples to straighten everything out.

Table 10-1**This, That, and Which**

<i>Term Used Independently</i>	<i>Term Followed by a Common Noun</i>
これ kore (koh-reh) <i>this one</i>	この kono (koh-noh) <i>this . . .</i>
それ sore (soh-reh) <i>that one near you</i>	その sono (soh-noh) <i>that . . . near you</i>
あれ are (ah-reh) <i>that one over there</i>	あの ano (ah-noh) <i>that . . . over there</i>
どれ dore (doh-reh) <i>which one</i>	どの dono (doh-noh) <i>which . . .</i>

あのビルは何ですか。 **Ano biru wa nan desu ka.** (ah-noh bee-roo wah nahn deh-soo kah.) (*What is that building?*)

あれはデパートです。 **Are wa depāto desu.** (ah-reh wah deh-pahh-toh deh-soo.) (*That one is a department store.*)

そのネックレスは高いですか。 **Sono nekkuresu wa takai desu ka.** (soh-noh nehk-koo-reh-soo wah tah-kah-ee deh-soo kah.) (*Is that necklace expensive?*)

どれを買いますか。 **Dore o kaimasu ka.** (doh-reh oh kah-ee-mah-soo kah.) (*Which one will you buy?*)

静岡のお茶はどれですか。 **Shizuoka no o-cha wa dore desu ka.** (shee-zoo-oh-kah noh oh-chah wah doh-reh deh-soo kah.) (*Which one is the tea produced in Shizuoka?*)



The particle **wa** (wah) marks the topic the speaker wants to talk about, so the item in question must already be familiar to both the speaker and the listener. As a result, a question word like **dore** (doh-reh) (*which one*) or **dono o-cha** (doh-noh oh-chah) (*which tea*) can't be marked by the topic particle **wa**.

Comparing two items



To make a comparison between two items in Japanese, you just need the Japanese equivalent of *than*, which is the particle **yori** (yoh-ree). Place **yori** right after the second item in the comparison. Take a look at a few examples to see this concept in action:

古い家具は新しい家具よりいいです。 **Furui kagu wa atarashii kagu yori ii desu.** (foo-roo-ee kah-goo wah ah-tah-rah-sheee kah-goo yoh-ree eee deh-soo.) (*Old furniture is better than new furniture.*)

私の車はあなたの車より高いです。 **Watashi no kuruma wa anata no kuruma yori takai desu.** (wah-tah-shee noh koo-roo-mah wah ah-nah-tah noh koo-roo-mah yoh-ree tah-kah-ee deh-soo.) (*My car is more expensive than your car.*)

この店はあの店よりサービスがいいです。 **Kono mise wa ano mise yori sabisu ga ii desu.** (koh-noh mee-seh wah ah-noh mee-seh yoh-ree sahh-bee-soo gah eee deh-soo.) (*This store has better service than that store.*)



To ask a friend or sales clerk *Which one is better*, remember that *which one* in Japanese is **dore** (doh-reh) or **dochira** (doh-chee-rah) and that you only use **dochira** when the question is about two items. (I tell you how to ask a question about three or more items in the following section.) Here are the steps for constructing an out-of-two comparison question:

1. List the two items being compared at the beginning of the sentence.
2. Add the particle **to** (toh) (*and*) after each item, just to make it look like a list.
3. Insert the question word **dochira**, followed by the subject-marking particle **ga** (gah).
4. Add the adjective with the question particle **ka** (kah).



Did you get lost? If you did, these examples will hopefully help clear things up:

これと、あれと、どちらがいいですか。 **Kore to, are to, dochira ga ii desu ka.** (koh-reh toh, ah-reh toh, doh-chee-rah gah eee deh-soo kah.) (*Which one is better, this one or that one?*)

ジェシカと、私と、どちらが好きですか。 **Jeshika to, watashi to, dochira ga suki desu ka.** (jeh-shee-kah toh, wah-tah-shee toh, doh-chee-rah gah soo-kee deh-soo kah.) (*Who do you like, Jessica or me?*)

お金と、名声と、どちらが大事ですか。 **O-kane to, meisei to, dochira ga daiji desu ka.** (oh-kah-neh toh, mehh-sehh toh, doh-chee-rah gah dah-ee-jee deh-soo kah.) (*Which one is more important, money or reputation?*)

You can answer these comparison questions a few different ways, but here's the simplest one: Just say the item of your choice with the verb **desu** (deh-soo) (*to be*). For example, if someone asks you **Piza to, sushi to, dochira ga suki desu ka.** (pee-zah toh, soo-shee toh, doh-chee-rah gah soo-kee deh-soo kah.) (*Which one do you like better, pizza or sushi?*), you can answer with **Piza desu.** (pee-zah deh-soo.) (*Pizza.*) or **Sushi desu.** (soo-shee deh-soo.) (*Sushi.*), depending on which one you like better.

Comparing three or more items



To express *the best* or *the most* in Japanese, just use the adverb **ichiban** (ee-chee-bahn) (*the most/the best*), which literally means *number one*. Simply place **ichiban** right before the adjective. Look at the following examples and see how easy forming *-est* and *most* sentences in Japanese is:

この車は一番大きいです。 **Kono kuruma wa ichiban ōkii desu.** (koh-noh koo-roo-mah wah ee-chee-bahn ohh-keeee deh-soo.) (*This car is the biggest.*)

この車は一番高級です。 **Kono kuruma wa ichiban kōkyū desu.** (koh-noh koo-roo-mah wah ee-chee-bahn kohhh-kyooo deh-soo.) (*This car is the most luxurious.*)

トムは一番やさしいです。 **Tomu wa ichiban yasashii desu.** (toh-moo wah ee-chee-bahn yah-sah-sheee deh-soo.) (*Tom is the kindest.*)

If you want to specify the domain in which an item is *the most* or *the best*, such as "in the class," "in the United States," or "in the world," insert a noun that specifies the domain, along with the particle **de** (deh), right before **ichiban**.

この車はアメリカで一番大きいです。 **Kono kuruma wa Amerika de ichiban ōkii desu.** (koh-noh koo-roo-mah wah ah-meh-ree-kah deh ee-chee-bahn ohh-keeee deh-soo.) (*This car is the biggest in America.*)

この車は世界で一番高級です。 **Kono kuruma wa sekai de ichiban kōkyū desu.** (koh-noh koo-roo-mah wah seh-kah-ee deh ee-chee-bahn kohhh-kyooo deh-soo.) (*This car is the most luxurious in the world.*)

トムはクラスで一番優しいです。 **Tomu wa kurasu de ichiban yasashii desu.** (toh-moo wah koo-rah-soo deh ee-chee-bahn yah-sah-sheee deh-soo.) (*Tom is the kindest in the class.*)



To ask which item is the best among three or more items, list them by using the particle **to** (toh); add two particles, **de** (deh) and **wa** (wah); and use the question words **dare** (dah-reh), **doko** (doh-koh), or **dore** (doh-reh). Use **dare** for people, **doko** for places, and **dore** for other items, including foods, cars, animals, plants, games, and academic subjects. All three words mean *which one*. (As I explain in the preceding section, you can't use **dochira** to mean *which one* in this context because you use **dochira** only for asking a question about two items.) Then add **ichiban**. Take a look:

ベスと、メアリーと、ケンと、ジョンでは、だれが一番優しいですか。

Besu to, Mearī to, Ken to, Jon de wa, dare ga ichiban yasashii desu ka. (beh-soo toh, meh-ah-reee toh, kehn toh, john deh wah, dah-reh gah ee-chee-bahn yah-sah-sheee deh-soo kah.) (*Among Beth, Mary, Ken, and John, who is the kindest?*)

ボストンと、東京と、シカゴでは、どこが一番寒いですか。

Bosuton to, Tōkyō to, Shikago de wa, doko ga ichiban samui desu ka. (boh-soo-tohn toh, tohh-kyohh toh, shee-kah-goh deh wah, doh-koh gah ee-chee-bahn sah-moo-ee deh-soo kah.) (*Among Boston, Tokyo, and Chicago, which one is the coldest?*)

ハンバーガーと、ホットドッグと、ピザでは、どれが一番好きですか。

Hanbāgā to, hotto doggu to, piza de wa, dore ga ichiban suki desu ka. (hahn-bahh-gahh toh, hoht-toh dohg-goo toh, pee-zah deh wah, doh-reh gah ee-chee-bahn soo-kee deh-soo kah.) (*Among hamburgers, hot dogs, and pizza, which one do you like the best?*)

Sometimes you want to specify the category of the items among which the comparison is made, like *out of foods*, *out of the students in the class*, or *among the cities in the country*. If so, specify the category at the beginning of the question and place two particles, **de** (deh) and **wa** (wah), right after it. Remember that you have to use **nani** (nah-nee) (*what*) rather than **dore** (doh-reh) (*which one*). So, if you're specifying a category rather than giving a list, use **dare** (dah-reh) (*who*) for people, **doko** (doh-koh) (*where*) for locations, and **nani** (nah-nee) (*what*) for other items. Switching **dore** and **nani** is a bit cumbersome, isn't it? You deserve a table to help you sort things out, so check out Table 10-2.

Table 10-2 Japanese Question Words for Various Comparisons

Category	Out of Two Items	Out of Three or More Items	Out of a Category of Items
People	どちら dochira	だれ dare	だれ dare
Locations	どちら dochira	どこ doko	どこ doko
Other items	どちら dochira	どれ dore	何 nani

Look at some “which one” questions concerning a category of items:

このクラスでは誰が一番やさしいですか。 **Kono kurasu de wa dare ga ichiban yashashii desu ka.** (koh-noh koo-rah-soo deh wah dah-reh gah ee-chee-bahn yah-sah-sheee deh-soo kah.) (*Who is the kindest in this class?*)

日本の町ではどこが一番きれいですか。 **Nihon no machi de wa doko ga ichiban kirei desu ka.** (nee-hohn noh mah-chee deh wah doh-koh gah ee-chee-bahn kee-rehh deh-soo kah.) (*Out of Japanese cities, which one is most beautiful?*)

食べ物では何が一番好きですか。 **Tabemono de wa nani ga ichiban suki desu ka.** (tah-beh-moh-noh deh wah nah-nee gah ee-chee-bahn soo-kee deh-soo kah.) (*Which food do you like best? [Literally: Among foods, which one do you like the best?]*)

The simplest way to answer these questions is to use **desu**. If someone asks you **Amerika de wa doko ga ichiban samui desu ka.** (ah-meh-ree-kah deh wah doh-koh gah ee-chee-bahn sah-moo-ee deh-soo kah.) (*Which place is the coldest in America?*), you can answer by saying **Arasuka desu!** (ah-rah-soo-kah deh-soo!) (*Alaska!*).

You Gotta Pay to Play: Buying Your Merchandise

At the end of a successful shopping venture, you get to go home with all kinds of new goodies. But first you have to pay for those goodies. The following sections reveal how to discuss prices, state your intention to buy something, and pay for your merchandise.

Identifying prices

In Japan, bargaining isn't a common practice except in a few places, like **Akihabara** (ah-kee-hah-bah-rah), the famous Electric Town. But you do need to have some idea of how to talk about prices. Here's a list of the basic pricing-related vocabulary to help you out:

- ✓ ちょっと高いです。 **Chotto takai desu.** (choht-toh tah-kah-ee deh-soo.) (*It's a little expensive.*)
- ✓ いくらですか。 **Ikura desu ka.** (ee-koo-rah deh-soo kah.) (*How much is it?*)
- ✓ まあまあ安いですね。 **Māmā yasui desu ne.** (mahh mahh yah-soo-ee deh-soo neh.) (*It's relatively cheap.*)

Stating that you want to buy something

When you're ready to make your purchase, you need to be able to say **kau** (kah-oo) (*to buy*). Here's how to conjugate this **u**-verb (remember to watch out for the **w** sound that appears in the negative form):

<i>Japanese Script</i>	<i>Rōmaji</i>	<i>Pronunciation</i>
買う	kau	kah-oo
買わない	kawanai	kah-wah-nah-ee
買い (ます)	kai(masu)	kah-ee(-mah-soo)
買って	katte	kaht-teh

When you decide to buy something at a store, mention the item and say **o kudasai** (oh koo-dah-sah-ee) or **o onegai shimasu** (oh oh-neh-gah-ee shee-mah-soo). **Kudasai** literally means *give/sell it to me*, whereas **onegai shimasu** literally means something like *beg/ask you to do it*. So **onegai shimasu** can be used in a variety of contexts where you want to ask someone to do something — it's not limited to giving or selling. Accordingly, **kudasai** is more straightforward; use it when you want to buy something as opposed to **onegai shimasu**.

これを下さい。 **Kore o kudasai.** (koh-reh oh koo-dah-sah-ee.) (*Please give this one to me.*)

あれをお願いします。 **Are o onegaishimasu.** (ah-reh oh oh-neh-gah-ee-shee-mah-soo.) (*That one, please.*)

あの人形を下さい。 **Ano ningyō o kudasai.** (ah-noh neen-gyohh oh koo-dah-sah-ee.) (*I'll take that doll.*)

Paying for your purchase

Whether you prefer to pay with **genkin** (gehn-keen) (*cash*) or **kurejitto kādo** (koo-reh-jeet-toh kahh-doh) (*credit card*), chances are you'll need the following words and phrases when paying for your purchases in Japanese:

- ✓ 円 **en** (ehn) (*yen*)
- ✓ 硬貨 **kōka** (kohh-kah) (*coins*)
- ✓ お札 **o-satsu** (oh-sah-tsoo) (*bills*)
- ✓ お返し **o-kaeshi** (oh-kah-eh-shee) (*return*)
- ✓ お釣り **o-tsuri** (oh-tsoo-ree) (*change*)
- ✓ レシート **reshīto** (reh-sheee-to) (*receipt*)
- ✓ 財布 **saifu** (sah-ee-foo) (*wallet*)

- ✓ 消費税 **shōhizei** (shohh-hee-zehh) (*sales tax*)
- ✓ 消費税込みで **shōhizei-komi de** (shohh-hee-zehh-koh-mee deh) (*including sales tax*)

Of course, you also need to know how to say *to pay*: **harau** (hah-rah-oo). Following is a conjugation of this **u**-verb. Watch out for the **w** sound that shows up in the negative form.

<i>Japanese Script</i>	<i>Rōmaji</i>	<i>Pronunciation</i>
払う	harau	hah-rah-oo
払わない	harawanai	hah-rah-wah-nah-ee
払い (ます)	harai(masu)	hah-rah-ee(-mah-soo)
払って	haratte	har-raht-teh

Talkin' the Talk



Michiko is paying for a pair of sneakers and a racket in a sporting-goods store. (Track 24)

Michiko: **Kore to kore o kudasai.**
koh-reh toh koh-reh oh koo-dah-sah-ee.
I want this and this please.

Clerk: **Hai. Shōhizei-komi de — 3,225-en de gozaimasu.**
hah-ee. shohh-hee-zehh koh-mee deh — sahn-zehn-nee-hyah-koo-nee-jooo-goh-ehn deh
goh-zah-ee-mah-soo.
Sure. Including the sales tax — 3,225 yen.

Michiko: **Jā, 4,000-en kara onegai shimasu.**
jahh, yohn-sehn-en kah-rah oh-neh-gah-ee
shee-mah-soo.
Then please take it out of 4,000 yen.

Clerk: **Hai. Dewa, 775-en no o-kaeshi de gozaimasu. Reshīto wa kochira de gozaimasu. Dōmo arigatō gozaimashita.**
hah-ee. deh-wah, nah-nah-hyah-koo-nah-nah-jooo-goh-ehn noh oh-kah-eh-shee deh goh-zah-ee-mah-soo. reh-sheee-toh wah koh-chee-rah deh
goh-zah-ee-mah-soo. dohh-moh ah-ree-gah-tohh
goh-zah-ee-mah-shee-tah.
*Sure. Your change is 775 yen. Here's the receipt.
Thank you very much.*

Words to Know

o kudasai	oh koo-dah-sah-ee	please give me
shōhizei-komi de	shohh-hee-zehhh-koh-mee deh	including sales tax
4,000-en kara	yohn-sehn-ehn kah-rah	from 4,000 yen
o-tsuri	oh-tsoo-ree	change
reshīto	reh-sheee-toh	receipt



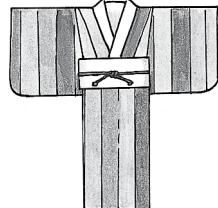
Fun & Games

Match the following illustrations with the words for the Japanese items. The solution is in Appendix D.



1.

a. 折り紙 origami



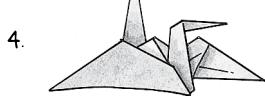
2.

b. 着物 kimono



3.

c. 下駄 geta



4.

d. 茶碗 chawan

Illustration by Elizabeth Kurtzman

Chapter 11

Going Out on the Town

In This Chapter

- ▶ Perusing your entertainment options
- ▶ Describing your recent outing
- ▶ Initiating plans with friends

I bet that your **machi** (mah-chee) (*town*) is full of great opportunities for fun. Read the **shinbun** (sheen-boon) (*newspaper*), pick up a few **zasshi** (zahs-shee) (*magazines*), or surf the **Intānetto** (een-tahh-neht-toh) (*Internet*) to find out what's going on. Perhaps the local museum is hosting an exhibit or a new movie that you're dying to see is playing at the cinema. Maybe you want to head to a club or try out your karaoke skills. Come on; get up off the couch, invite your friends to join you in your adventures, and then go have some fun!

Checking Out Entertaining Activities

Pick your favorite type of entertainment. Do you want to dance, sing, play games, or drink? No need to limit yourself here. You can do all four at the same time! You can also visit an art museum or catch a show. The following sections give you the words and phrases you need to know when partaking in a variety of fun activities while you're out on the town.

Getting cultured at museums and galleries

If your daily life is filled with hassles and headaches, your heart deserves to be cleansed, nourished, and rejuvenated with a little culture. Why not check out one of these places?

- ✓ 美術館 **bijutsukan** (bee-joo-tsoo-kahn) (*art museum*)
- ✓ 画廊 **garō** (gah-rohh) (*art galleries*)

- ✓ 博物館 **hakubutsukan** (hah-koo-boo-tsoo-kahn) (*museums*)
- ✓ 図書館 **toshokan** (toh-shoh-kahn) (*libraries*)

Of course, you need to be aware of when these institutions open and close for the day if you're going to visit them. Conjugate the **u**-verbs **aku** (ah-koo) (*to open*) and **shimaru** (shee-mah-roo) (*to close*).

<i>Japanese Script</i>	<i>Rōmaji</i>	<i>Pronunciation</i>
開く	aku	ah-koo
開かない	akanai	ah-kah-nah-ee
開き (ます)	aki(masu)	ah-kee(-mah-soo)
開いて	aite	ah-ee-teh
<i>Japanese Script</i>	<i>Rōmaji</i>	<i>Pronunciation</i>
閉まる	shimaru	shee-mah-roo
閉まらない	shimaranai	shee-mah-rah-nah-ee
閉まり (ます)	shimari(masu)	shee-mah-ree(-mah-soo)
閉まって	shimatte	shee-maht-teh

Now that you know how to say those verbs in Japanese, take a look at these helpful sample questions that you may want to ask:

博物館は何時に開きますか。 **Hakubutsukan wa nan-ji ni akimasu ka.** (hah-koo-boo-tsoo-kahn wah nahm-jee nee ah-kee-mah-soo kah.) (*What time does the museum open?*)

何時に閉まりますか。 **Nan-ji ni shimarimasu ka.** (nahm-jee nee shee-mah-ree-mah-soo kah.) (*What time does it close?*)

日曜日はお休みですか。 **Nichiyōbi wa oyasumi desu ka.** (nee-chee-yohh-bee wah oh-yah-soo-mee deh-soo kah.) (*Is it closed on Sundays?*)

Heading to the theater

Visiting theaters lets you really feel the passion of the performers. And just about everyone enjoys going to a movie theater. The following words and phrases are useful when heading to the theater to see a performance or watch a movie:

- ✓ バレー **barē** (bah-rehh) (*ballet*)
- ✓ チケット **chiketto** (chee-keht-toh) (*ticket*)

- ✓ 映画 **eiga** (ehh-gah) (*movie*)
- ✓ 映画館 **eigakan** (ehh-gah-kahn) (*movie theater*)
- ✓ 劇場 **gekiō** (geh-kee-johh) (*theater for performances*)
- ✓ インターミッショ n **intāmisshon** (een-tahh-mee-shohn) (*intermission*)
- ✓ コンサート **konsāto** (kohn-sahh-toh) (*concert*)
- ✓ ミュージカル **myūjikaru** (myooo-jee-kah-roo) (*musical*)
- ✓ 芝居 **shibai** (shee-bah-ee) (*play*)

Here are some example sentences that help you ask for various kinds of tickets at shows and movies:

シニア一人お願いします。 **Shinia hitori onegaishimasu.** (shee-nee-ah hee-toh-ree oh-neh-gah-ee-shee-mah-soo.) (*One senior citizen, please.*)

一万円の席をお願いします。 **Ichiman-en no seki o onegaishimasu.** (ee-chee-mahn-ehn noh seh-kee oh oh-neh-gah-ee-shee-mah-soo.) (*A 10,000-yen seat, please.*)

大人二人お願いします。 **Otona futari onegaishimasu.** (oh-toh-nah foo-tah-ree oh-neh-gah-ee-shee-mah-soo.) (*Two adults, please.*)

大人二人と子ども一人お願いします。 **Otona futari to kodomo hitori onegaishimasu.** (oh-toh-nah foo-tah-ree toh koh-doh-moh hee-toh-ree oh-neh-gah-ee-shee-mah-soo.) (*Two adults and one child, please.*)



Kabuki

歌舞伎 **Kabuki** (kah-boo-kee), which began in the 17th century, is one of the most popular types of traditional theater in Japan. All the action takes place on a dynamic, revolving stage.

The actors (all males, even in female roles) wear heavy makeup and colorful, spectacular costumes. Watch how they move their necks and fingers and how they walk and sit down. It's amazing.

The Kabukiza Theater in Tokyo is world famous. The theater has large restaurants where you

can grab a quick dinner during intermission. It also rents earphones that provide English commentary and explanations on the play's plot, music, and actors.

Other Japanese traditional theater arts include 能 **Nō** (nohh) (*Noh*), a musical theater developed in the 14th century, where actors wear masks, and 文樂 **bunraku** (boon-rah-koo) (*Bunraku*), a puppet theater developed in the 17th century.



Use the counter **-mai** (mah-ee) for counting tickets because tickets are usually flat. (See Chapter 3 for a discussion on counters.)

Drinking and dancing at bars and clubs

Having a drink at home is usually much cheaper than going to a **bā** (bahh) (*bar*), **izakaya** (ee-zah-kah-yah) (*casual Japanese-style bar*), or **kurabu** (koo-rah-boo) (*nightclub*), but where's the fun in that?

All bars and clubs in Japan serve **o-sake** (oh-sah-keh), which means both *Japanese rice wine* and *alcoholic beverages* in general. If you like beer, try some Japanese-brand beers like **Asahi** (ah-sah-hee), **Kirin** (kee-reen), or **Sapporo** (sahp-poh-roh). These beers are sold in many countries throughout the world, including the United States and Canada. Now, take a walk over to the bar and order your favorite **o-sake**:

- ✓ 热爛 **atsukan** (ah-tsoo-kahn) (*hot sake*)
- ✓ ビール **bīru** (beeee-roo) (*beer*)
- ✓ ブランデー **burandē** (boo-rahn-dehh) (*brandy*)
- ✓ チューハイ **chūhai** (chooo-hah-ee) (*shōchū and tonic*)
- ✓ ジン **jin** (jeen) (*gin*)
- ✓ カクテル **kakuteru** (kah-koo-teh-roo) (*cocktail*)
- ✓ 水割り **mizuvari** (mee-zoo-wah-ree) (*whiskey and water*)
- ✓ オンザロック **onzarokku** (ohn-zah-rohk-koo) (*whiskey on the rocks*)
- ✓ ラム酒 **ramushu** (rah-moo-shoo) (*rum*)
- ✓ 冷酒 **reishu** (reh-ee-shoo) (*chilled sake*)
- ✓ 烧酎 **shōchū** (shohh-chooo) (*a Japanese liquor similar to vodka*)
- ✓ ストレート **sutorēto** (soo-toh-rehh-toh) (*whiskey straight*)
- ✓ ウイスキー **uisukī** (oo-ee-soo-keee) (*whiskey*)
- ✓ ウオッカ **uokka** (oo-ohk-kah) (*vodka*)
- ✓ ワイン **wain** (wah-een) (*wine*)

Young people in Japan love to dance the night away in a place referred to as **kurabu**. The popular music in **kurabu** includes **tekuno** (teh-koo-noh) (*techno*), **hippu-hoppu** (heep-poo-hohp-poo) (*hip-hop*), **hausu** (hah-oo-soo) (*house music*), and **jēpoppu** (jehh-pohp-poo) (*J-pop [Japanese pop music]*).

Girls dress attractively, and guys try to look cool. You can find many **kurabu** in larger cities such as Tokyo, Osaka, and Nagoya. More and more young Japanese do street dance, but ballroom dance is also popular, especially among middle-aged people. (You may want to watch the famous 1996 Japanese film *Shall We Dance?* starring Koji Yakusho. The 2004 American film *Shall We Dance* starring Richard Gere was a remake of this Japanese film.) Now cut a rug and conjugate the **u**-verb **odoru** (oh-doh-roo) (*to dance*)!

<i>Japanese Script</i>	<i>Rōmaji</i>	<i>Pronunciation</i>
踊る	odoru	oh-doh-roo
踊らない	odoranai	oh-doh-rah-nah-ee
踊り (ます)	odori(masu)	oh-doh-ree(-mah-soo)
踊って	odotte	oh-doh-teh

Talkin' the Talk



Makoto Tanaka goes into an **izakaya** — a casual bar with home-style food — after work. (Track 25)

Cook: **Irasshai! O-hitori?**
ee-rahs-shah-ee! o-hee-toh-ree.
Welcome! Just yourself?

Makoto: **Sō.**
sohh.
Right.

Cook: **Jā, koko dōzo. Nani nomu.**
jahh, koh-koh dohh-zoh. nah-nee noh-moo.
Then please sit here. What will you drink?

Makoto: **Bīru.**
beee-roo.
Beer.

Cook: **Hai yo.**
hah-ee yoh.
Okay.

Makoto looks at the menu on the wall, wondering what to order.

Makoto: **Kyō wa nani ga oishii.**
kyohh wah nah-nee gah oh-ee-sheee.
What's good today?

Cook: **Kyō wa aji ga oishii yo.**
kyohh wah ah-jee gah oh-ee-sheee yoh.
The horse mackerel is delicious today.

Makoto: **Jā, sore.**
jahh, soh-reh.
Then I'll have that.

Cook: **Hai yo.**
hah-ee yoh.
Sure.

Words to Know

Irasshai!	ee-rahs-shah-ee!	Welcome!
nomu	noh-moo	to drink
bīru	beee-roo	beer
oishii	oh-ee-shee-ee	delicious
aji	ah-jee	horse mackerel

Singing at a karaoke box

Karaoke is an abbreviation of **kara ōkesutora** (kah-rah ohh-keh-soo-toh-rah), which means *empty orchestra*. So you can think of karaoke as an orchestra in search of a singer.

Karaoke started in Japan about 30 years ago as a form of after-work entertainment for Japanese businesspeople. Karaoke was viewed as a great way of releasing the daily stress related to work. Today, karaoke is popular among everyone — men and women, young and old. It's an artistic, intelligent, accessible, and healthy entertainment.



Dining in izakaya

Drinking is almost obligatory for Japanese businessmen. Part of their job involves entertaining their clients in bars and nightclubs. But not all bar traffic is work-related. Both Japanese men and women drink with their friends and colleagues in 居酒屋 **izakaya** (ee-zah-kah-yah) (*casual Japanese-style bars*). It's something like the Japanese equivalent of a British pub. In **izakaya**, you don't hear wordy, honorific phrases very much. Waiters and waitresses treat you like you're a member of their families. Sitting at the counter is definitely fun. You can watch the chefs cook, and you can chat with them. Trust me — enjoy several appetizers. You can always share dishes with your friends at the table. Eat some of these foods at **izakaya**:

- ✓ 冷やっこ **hiyayakko** (hee-yah-yahk-koh) (*chilled tofu with sauce and spices*)
- ✓ 牡蠣フライ **kaki furai** (kah-kee foo-ra-h-ee) (*deep-fried oysters*)
- ✓ 肉じゃが **nikujaga** (nee-koo-jah-gah) (*beef and potatoes*)
- ✓ おでん **oden** (oh-dehn) (*Tokyo-style stew*)
- ✓ 酢のもの **sunomono** (soo-noh-moh-noh) (*vinegared food*)
- ✓ 焼き魚 **yakizakana** (yah-kee-zah-kah-nah) (*grilled fish*)

Karaoke bars have spread all over the world, but nowadays, karaoke boxes are more popular in Japan. A *karaoke box* is an insulated individual room with a sofa, coffee table, and a karaoke set. You just rent it for a few hours with your friends. It's not expensive, and it's open for all ages, including minors. If you want to enjoy karaoke, make sure you know these words and phrases:

- ✓ 画面 **gamen** (gah-mehn) (*monitor*)
- ✓ 歌詞 **kashi** (kah-shee) (*lyrics*)
- ✓ カラオケ **karaoke** (kah-rah-oh-keh) (*karaoke*)
- ✓ 曲 **kyoku** (kyoh-koo) (*musical pieces*)
- ✓ マイク **maiku** (mah-ee-koo) (*microphone*)
- ✓ 音痴 **onchi** (ohn-chee) (*tone-deaf*)
- ✓ 歌 **uta** (oo-tah) (*song*)

Last, but certainly not least, make sure you know how to say **utau** (oo-tah-oo) (*to sing*). Here's how to conjugate this **u**-verb.

<i>Japanese Script</i>	<i>Rōmaji</i>	<i>Pronunciation</i>
歌う	utau	oo-tah-oo
歌わない	utawanai	oo-tah-wah-nah-ee
歌い（ます）	utai(masu)	oo-tah-ee(-mah-soo)
歌って	utatte	oo-taht-teh

Talking about Entertainment

If your friends or co-workers find out that you visited the museum's latest exhibit or went to the new bar in town, chances are they'll ask you what you thought. Following are some simple phrases you can use to describe what you thought of your entertainment experience. Note that all the sentences are in the past tense and in the informal speech style. (For detailed information on tenses and the difference between the informal style of speech and the polite/neutral style, see Chapter 3.)

- ✓ きれいだった。 **Kirei datta.** (kee-reh-ee daht-tah.) (*It was beautiful.*)
- ✓ ひどかった。 **Hidokatta.** (hee-doh-kaht-tah.) (*It was terrible.*)
- ✓ 感動した。 **Kandō shita.** (kahn-dohh shee-tah.) (*I was moved.*)
- ✓ 混んでいた。 **Konde ita.** (kohn-deh ee-tah.) (*It was crowded.*)
- ✓ 美味しかった。 **Oishikatta.** (oh-ee-shee-kaht-tah.) (*It was delicious.*)
- ✓ 面白かった。 **Omoshirokatta.** (oh-moh-shee-roh-kaht-tah.) (*It was interesting.*)
- ✓ 素晴らしかった。 **Subarashikatta.** (soo-bah-rah-shee-kaht-tah.) (*It was wonderful.*)
- ✓ 高かつた。 **Takakatta.** (tah-kah-kaht-tah.) (*It was expensive.*)
- ✓ 楽しかった。 **Tanoshikatta.** (tah-noh-shee-kaht-tah.) (*It was fun.*)
- ✓ 安かつた。 **Yasukatta.** (yah-soo-kaht-tah.) (*It was cheap.*)
- ✓ よかつた。 **Yokatta.** (yoh-kaht-tah.) (*It was good.*)

To make the previous expressions sound polite, do the following:

- ✓ For **i**-type adjectives ending in **katta** (kaht-tah), just add **desu** (deh-soo). So instead of saying **Omoshirokatta**, say **Omoshirokatta desu**.
- ✓ For **na**-type adjectives ending in **datta** (daht-tah), simply exchange **datta** for **deshita** (deh-shee-tah). So instead of saying **Kirei datta**, say **Kirei deshita**.

- ✓ For the verbs, you need to change the ending **ta** (tah) to **mashita** (mah-shee-tah). For example, instead of saying **Kandō shita** and **Konde ita**, say **Kandō shimashita** and **Konde imashita**, respectively.
- ✓ For **u**-verbs, refer to the conjugation table in Chapter 3 for precisely how to make additional changes.

Getting Your Friends to Go Out with You

Because going out on the town is often more fun when you're with others, why not invite your significant other, classmate, or colleague to join you? Start by figuring out how to conjugate the **u**-verb **sasou** (sah-soh-oo) (*to invite*).

<i>Japanese Script</i>	<i>Rōmaji</i>	<i>Pronunciation</i>
誘う	sasou	sah-soh-oo
誘わない	sasowanai	sah-soh-wah-nah-ee
誘い (ます)	sasoi(masu)	sah-soh-ee(-mah-soo)
誘つて	sasotte	sah-soht-teh

The following sections help you get even more socially active with your Japanese.

Making a suggestion with “Why don’t we?”



If you want to go somewhere with your friend, make a suggestion by saying *Why don't we go there? How about going there? or Would you like to go there?* The easiest, most natural, and least pushy way of making a suggestion in Japanese is to ask a question that ends in **-masen ka** (mah-sehn kah). **-masen ka** is the polite negative ending **-masen** plus the question particle **ka**. Why negative? In English, you say things like *Why don't we go to the bar tonight?* That's negative too, so fair is fair.

Make sure the verb before **-masen ka** is in the stem form, as in **Ikimasen ka** (ee-kee-mah-sehn kah) (*Why don't we go there?*). The **iki** part is the stem form of the verb **iku** (ee-koo) (*to go*). If you want to do something, use other verbs like **suru** (soo-roo) (*to do*), **utau** (oo-tah-oo) (*to sing*), and **taberu** (tah-beh-roo) (*to eat*). Check out these examples:

映画館に行きませんか。 **Eigakan ni ikimasen ka.** (ehh-gah-kahn nee ee-kee-mah-sehn kah.) (*Why don't we go to a movie theater?*)

田中さんと山田さんを誘いませんか。 **Tanaka-san to Yamada-san o sasōimasen ka.** (tah-nah-kah-sahn toh yah-mah-dah-sahn oh sah-soh-ee-mah-sehn kah.) (*How about inviting Mr. Tanaka and Mr. Yamada?*)

いつかいっしょにテニスをしませんか。 **Itsuka isshonī tenisu o shimasen ka.** (ee-tsoo-kah ees-shoh-nee teh-nee-soo oh shee-mah-sehn kah.) (*Why don't we play tennis together someday?*)

今度いっしょに歌いませんか。 **Kondo isshonī utaimasen ka.** (kohn-doh ees-shoh-nee oo-tah-ee-mah-sehn kah.) (*How about singing together next time?*)

今度いっしょにロブスターを食べませんか。 **Kondo isshonī robusutā o tabemasen ka.** (kohn-doh ees-shoh-nee roh-boo-soo-tahh oh tah-beh-mah-sehn kah.) (*How about eating lobster together next time?*)

Saying “Let's go” and “Shall we go?”

In English, you can enthusiastically invite your friends to an activity by saying *Let's go there*. or *Let's do it*. How do you say *let's* in Japanese? It's easy: Get a verb in the stem form and add the ending **-mashō** (mah-shohh), as in **ikimashō** (ee-kee-mah-shohh) (*let's go*), **shimashō** (shee-mah-shohh) (*let's do it*), **utaimashō** (oo-tah-ee-mah-shohh) (*let's sing*), and **tabemashō** (tah-beh-mah-shohh) (*let's eat*). Check out the following examples:

いっしょに歌いましょう。 **Isshoni utaimashō.** (ees-shoh-nee oo-tah-ee-mah-shohh.) (*Let's sing together.*)

今晚いっしょに飲みましょう。 **Konban isshonī nomimashō.** (kohn-bahn ees-sho-nee noh-mee-mah-shohh.) (*Let's drink together tonight.*)

今度いっしょに映画を見ましょう。 **Kondo isshonī eiga o mimashō.** (kohn-doh ees-shoh-nee ehh-gah oh mee-mah-shohh.) (*Let's see a movie together next time.*)

If you make a question by using **-mashō**, it means *Shall we?* For example

チェスをしましょうか。 **Chesu o shimashō ka.** (cheh-soo oh shee-mah-shohh kah.) (*Shall we play chess?*)

カントリーガーデンに行きましょうか。 **Kantori Gāden ni ikimashō ka.** (kahn-toh-reeee gahh-dehn nee ee-kee-mah-shohh kah.) (*Shall we go to Country Garden?*)



-mashō ka also means *Shall I?*, so it's useful when you want to say something like *Shall I bring something?* and *Shall I help you?* Usually, the subject is unspoken, but the context clarifies whether **-mashō ka** means *Shall we?* or *Shall I?* However, you can add **watashi ga** (wah-tah-shee gah) if you want to clarify that you're the only one who is doing the action:

手伝いましょうか。 **Tetsudaimashō ka.** (teh-tsoo-dah-ee-mah-shohh kah.) (*Shall I help you?*)

私が予約しましょうか。 **Watashi ga yoyaku shimashō ka.** (wah-tah-shee gah yoh-yah-koo shee-mah-shohh kah.) (*Shall I make a reservation?*)

Talkin' the Talk



Allison asks her colleague Yukiko whether she wants to go to a karaoke box together after work. (Track 26)

Allison: **Konban hima desu ka.**
kohn-bahn hee-mah deh-soo kah.
Are you free tonight?

Yukiko: É.
ehh.
Yes.

Allison: **Karaoke bokkusu ni ikimasen ka.**
kah-rah-oh-keh bohk-koo-soo nee ee-kee-mah-sehn
kah.
How about going to a karaoke box?

Yukiko: **Ii desu ne. Ikimashō.**
eee deh-soo neh. ee-kee-mah-shohh.
Sounds good. Let's go there.

Allison: **Jēson to Ken mo sasoimasesen ka.**
jehh-sohn toh kehn moh sah-soh-ee-mah-sehn kah.
How about inviting Jason and Ken, too?

Yukiko: **Ii desu yo.**
eee deh-soo yoh.
That's fine with me.

- Allison **Jā, roku-ji ni Karaoke Sebun de.**
 jahh, roh-koo-jee nee kah-rah-oh-keh seh-boon deh.
 *Then, I'll see you at Karaoke Seven at 6:00. (Literally:
 Then, at 6:00, at Karaoke Seven.)*
- Yukiko: **Ē. Jā, mata.**
 ehh. jahh, mah-tah.
 Sure. See you later.

Words to Know

konban	kohn-bahn	tonight
hima	hee-mah	free (not busy)
ii desu ne.	eee deh-soo neh.	<i>Sounds good.</i>
sasou	sah-soh-oo	to invite
sebun	seh-boon	seven (English word)
ii desu yo.	eee deh-soo yoh.	<i>That's fine (with me).</i>

Inviting Friends Over and Asking Them to Bring Something

Sometimes you just don't feel like going out, but you don't want to be by yourself either. On those occasions, consider inviting your friends over to your house. Use the irregular verb **kuru** (koo-roo) (*to come*) when you call. But before you invite anyone, practice conjugating **kuru**.

Japanese Script	Rōmaji	Pronunciation
来る	kuru	koo-roo
来ない	konai	koh-nah-ee
来（ます）	ki(masu)	kee(-mah-soo)
来て	kite	kee-teh

Now, you're ready to invite your friends over:

うちに来ませんか。 **Uchi ni kimasen ka.** (oo-chee nee kee-mah-sehn kah.) (*Would you like to come to my house?*)

あした私のアパートに来ませんか。 **Ashita watashi no apāto ni kimasen ka.** (ah-shee-tah wah-tah-shee noh ah-pahh-toh nee kee-mah-sehn kah.) (*Would you like to come to my apartment tomorrow?*)

If you're the one who gets invited, ask your friend what you can bring. Japanese hosts and hostesses tend to tell their guests not to bring anything, but go ahead and bring something anyway.



To say *to bring something*, use **motte** (moht-teh), which is the verb **motsu** (moh-tsoo) (*to hold*) in the **te-form**, and add the verb **iku** (ee-koo) (*to go*) or **kuru** (koo-roo) (*to come*). Sounds complex, right? I agree with you. The idea is that bringing something is equivalent to going/coming somewhere while holding it. Of course, you can also understand them as a unit, namely, **mottekuru** and **motteiku**. Check out these examples:

私はビールを持って行きました。 **Watashi wa bīru o motte ikimashita.** (wah-tah-shee wah bee-roo oh moht-teh ee-kee-mah-shee-tah.) (*I brought beer.*)

田中さんはビールを持って来ました。 **Tanaka-san wa bīru o motte kimashita.** (tah-nah-kah-sahn wa bee-roo oh moht-teh kee-mah-shee-tah.) (*Mr. Tanaka brought beer.*)

To talk about bringing a pet or taking a friend to somewhere, use **tsurete** rather than **motte**. **Tsurete** is the **te-form** of the verb **tsureru** (tsoo-reh-roo) (*to take*); see Chapter 3 for more about the **te-form**.

私は友達を連れて行きました。 **Watashi wa tomodachi o tsurete iki-mashita.** (wah-tah-shee toh-moh-dah-chee oh tsoo-reh-teh ee-kee-mah-shee-tah.) (*I brought my friend.*)

田中さんは友達を連れて来ました。 **Tanaka-san wa tomodachi o tsurete kimashita.** (tah-nah-kah-sahn wa toh-moh-dah-chee oh tsoo-reh-teh kee-mah-shee-tah.) (*Mr. Tanaka brought his friend.*)



To say *something, someone, somewhere*, and so on, combine a question word and the particle **ka** (kah). The particles **ga** (gah) and **o** (oh) are usually dropped after these words, but other types of particles can appear after them. For example

あそこに何かありますよ。 **Asoko ni nanika arimasu yo.** (ah-soh-koh nee nah-nee-kah ah-ree-mah-soo yoh.) (*There is something over there.*)

何か持つて行きましょうか。 **Nanika motte ikimashō ka.** (nah-nee-kah moht-teh ee-kee-mah-shohh kah.) (*Shall I bring something?*)

誰か来ましたか。 **Dareka kimashita ka.** (dah-reh-kah kee-mah-shee-tah kah.) (*Did someone come?*)

どこかに行きませんか。 **Dokoka ni ikimasen ka.** (doh-koh-kah nee ee-kee-mah-sehn ka.) (*Shall we go somewhere?*)

いつかいっしょに飲みましょう。 **Itsuka isshoni nomimashō.** (ee-tsoo-kah ees-shoh-nee noh-mee-mah-shohh.) (*Let's drink together someday.*)

To say *nothing*, *no one*, *nowhere*, and so on, use a question word and the particle **mo** (moh), but make sure to have the verb in the negative form. The particles **ga** and **o** must not occur in this context, but other types of particles need to occur right before **mo**. For example

何も食べませんでした。 **Nani mo tabemasen deshita.** (nah-nee moh tah-beh-mah-sehn deh-shee-tah.) (*I ate nothing.; I didn't eat anything.*)

何も持って来ないでください。 **Nani mo motte konaide kudasai.** (nah-nee moh moht-teh koh-nah-ee-deh koo-dah-sah-ee.) (*Please don't bring anything.*)

誰も来ません。 **Dare mo kimasen.** (dah-reh moh kee-mah-sehn.) (*No one will come.*)

昨日はどこにも行きませんでした。 **Kinō wa doko ni mo ikimasen deshita.** (kee-nohh wah doh-koh nee moh ee-kee-mah-sehn deh-shee-tah.) (*I went nowhere yesterday.; I didn't go anywhere yesterday.*)

See Chapter 3 for a list of question words and particles as well as negative forms of verbs.

Talkin' the Talk



Ms. Mori invites George to her house. (Track 27)

Ms. Mori:

Kondo no nichiyōbi, uchi ni kimasen ka.

kohn-doh noh nee-chee-yohh-bee, oo-chee nee kee-mah-sehn kah.

Would you like to come to my house this Sunday?

George:

Ā, dōmo. Yorokonde.

ahh, dohh-moh. yoh-roh-kohn-deh.

Oh, thank you. I'd be delighted. (Literally: Delightedly.)

Ms. Mori:

Isshoni bābekyū o shimashō.

ees-shoh-nee bahh-beh-kyooo oh shee-mah-shohh.

Let's have a barbecue together.

George: **Ā, ii desu ne.**
ahh, eee deh-soo neh.
That sounds great.

Nanika motteikimashō ka.
nah-nee-kah moht-teh-ee-kee-mah-shohh kah.
Shall I bring something?

Ms. Mori: **Īe, ii desu. Nani mo motte konaide kudasai.**
eee-eh, eee deh-soo. nah-nee moh moht-teh koh-
nah-ee-deh koo-dah-sah-ee.
No, thank you. Please don't bring anything.

Words to Know

kondo no nichiyōbi	kohn-doh noh nee-chee-yohh-bee	coming Sunday
yorokonde	yoh-roh-kohn-deh	delightedly
isshoni	ees-shoh-nee	together
bābekyū	bahh-beh-kyooo	barbecue
nanika	nah-nee-kah	something



Fun & Games

In the following puzzle, try to find these words in Japanese: *gallery, art museum, movie theater, library, museum, izakaya bar, theater*. The solution is in Appendix D.

ā	w	u	r	y	z	i	d	f	b	f	ō
g	e	k	i	j	ō	z	p	d	i	h	t
a	b	t	h	ī	e	a	a	k	j	p	r
r	h	o	k	o	s	k	z	k	u	r	h
ō	i	s	ī	ō	t	a	ā	h	t	k	e
ū	o	h	b	w	ā	y	ē	f	s	h	ō
k	ā	o	k	m	t	a	z	ē	u	t	u
h	a	k	u	b	u	t	s	u	k	a	n
ē	y	a	n	j	t	z	ā	u	a	u	ī
n	f	n	e	i	g	a	k	a	n	o	ō

Chapter 12

Taking Care of Business and Telecommunications

In This Chapter

- ▶ Looking for work
 - ▶ Tackling office vocab
 - ▶ Calling on phone terms and etiquette
 - ▶ Understanding computer talk
 - ▶ Meeting at the meeting
-

Whether you want to find a job in Japan or you simply have Japanese co-workers, knowing some basic office-related terminology is helpful. Consider this chapter your go-to resource for all things regarding Japanese-style business and business communications.

Embarking on the Great Job Hunt

Have you ever had a dream of working in Japan, perhaps as an English teacher, an engineer, a businessperson, an illustrator, or a singer? If so, the first thing you need to do is send out your **rirekisho** (ree-reh-kee-shoh) (*resume*) with your complete **shokureki** (shoh-koo-reh-kee) (*work history*) in the hopes of securing a **mensetsu** (mehn-seh-tsoo) (*interview*).

The following sections offer essential vocabulary to help you talk about the duties and conditions of a particular **shigoto** (shee-goh-toh) (*job*) during a **mensetsu**.

Clarifying your duties

When you're searching for a new job, spelling out the duties, responsibilities, and obligations associated with the position is always a good idea. You can

start figuring out your job duties in Japanese by conjugating the **u**-verb **hataraku** (hah-tah-rah-koo) (*to work*):

<i>Japanese Script</i>	<i>Rōmaji</i>	<i>Pronunciation</i>
働く	hataraku	hah-tah-rah-koo
働かない	hatarakanai	hah-tah-rah-kah-nah-ee
働き (ます)	hataraki(masu)	hah-tah-rah-kee(-mah-soo)
働いて	hataraitे	hah-tah-rah-ee-teh

Following are a couple of questions you can ask to learn more about the responsibilities of the job you're applying for:

- ✓ 私の役割は何かですか。 **Watashi no yakuwari wa nan desu ka.** (wah-tah-shee noh yah-koo-wah-ree wah nahn deh-soo kah.) (*What is my responsibility?*)
- ✓ 土曜日も働くなくてはいけませんか。 **Doyōbi mo hatarakanakute wa ikemasen ka.** (doh-yohh-bee mo hah-tah-rah-kah-nah-koo-teh wah ee-keh-mah-sehn kah.) (*Do I have to work on Saturdays too?*)



When you discuss an obligation and you need to use the phrase *I have to* or *I must*, drop the final **i** (ee) from the negative form of the verb (see Chapter 3) and add **-kute wa ikemasen** (koo-teh wah ee-keh-mah-sehn). For example, the negative form of **taberu** (tah-beh-roo) (*to eat*) is **tabenai** (tah-beh-nah-ee). By dropping the **i** from **tabenai** and adding **-kute wa ikemasen**, you get **tabenakute wa ikemasen** (tah-beh-nah-koo-teh wah ee-keh-mah-sehn), which means *I have to eat*. It's long, I admit, but it's the easiest way to express *have to* or *must* in Japanese. In an informal context, you can use **-kute wa ikenai** (koo-teh wah ee-keh-nah-ee) rather than **-kute wa ikemasen**. Take a look at these examples:

8時間働くなくてはいけません。 **8-jikan hatarakanakute wa ikemasen.** (hah-chee-jee-kahn hah-tah-rah-kah-nah-koo-teh wah ee-keh-mah-sehn.) (*I have to work for eight hours.*)

健康保険がなくてはいけません。 **Kenkō hoken ga nakute wa ikemasen.** (kehn-kohh hoh-kehn gah nah-koo-teh wah ee-keh-mah-sehn.) (*I have to have health insurance.*)

今日は残業をしなくてはいけないです。 **Kyōwa zangyō o shinakute wa ikenai-n-desu.** (kyohh-wah zahn-gyohh oh shee-nah-koo-teh wah ee-keh-nah-een-deh-soo.) (*I have to work overtime today.*)

もう帰らなくてはいけませんか。 **Mō kaeranakute wa ikemasen ka.** (mohh kah-eh-rah-nah-koo-teh wah ee-keh-mah-sehn kah.) (*Do you have to go home already?*)



Attending parties as part of your job

To help employees bond with each other, employers organize some seasonal or occasional parties. Employees aren't formally required to attend them, but they are sort of obliged to attend them. The following types of parties are very common:

- ✓ **忘年会 bōnenkai** (bohh-nehn-kah-ee) (*year-end party*, literally translated as a "forget-the-year party")

- ✓ **新年会 shinnenkai** (sheen-nehn-kah-ee) (*New Year's party*)
- ✓ **歓迎会 kangeikai** (kahn-gehh-kah-ee) (*welcome party for new colleagues*)
- ✓ **送別会 sōbetsukai** (sohh-beh-tssoo-kah-ee) (*farewell party for colleagues that are retiring, resigning, or moving to another section*)



You can express a ton of activities you need to do at your workplace by using the verb **suru** (soo-roo) (*to do*). (Head to Chapter 13 for a detailed discussion of uses for **suru**.) Here are a few **suru** phrases that may come up in your workplace:

- ✓ チェックする **chekku suru** (chehk-koo soo-roo) (*to check*)
- ✓ ファックスする **fakkusu suru** (fahk-koo-soo soo-roo) (*to fax*)
- ✓ 配達する **haitatsu suru** (hah-ee-tah-tssoo soo-roo) (*to deliver*)
- ✓ 確認する **kakunin suru** (kah-koo-neen soo-roo) (*to confirm*)
- ✓ 計算する **keisan suru** (kehh-sahn soo-roo) (*to calculate*)
- ✓ コピーする **kopi suru** (koh-peee soo-roo) (*to make copies*)
- ✓ メールする **mēru suru** (mehhh-roo soo-roo) (*to e-mail*)
- ✓ 掃除する **sōji suru** (sohh-jee soo-roo) (*to clean*)
- ✓ 添付する **tenpu suru** (tehn-poo soo-roo) (*to attach*)
- ✓ 郵送する **yūsō suru** (yooo-sohh soo-roo) (*to mail*)

Discussing a job's benefits

An interview is your opportunity to find out all about the benefits offered at a **shokuba** (shoh-koo-bah) (*workplace*). Make sure you know these words and phrases before your interview so you can intelligently participate in a discussion of benefits:

- ✓ **健康保険 kenkō hoken** (kehn-kohh hoh-kehn) (*health insurance*)
- ✓ **交通費 kōtsūhi** (kohh-tssoo-hee) (*commuting allowance*)

- ✓ 紙料 **kyūryō** (kyooo-ryohh) (*salary*)
- ✓ 有給休暇 **yūkyūkyūka** (yooo-kyooo-kyooo-kah) (*paid vacation*)
- ✓ 残業手当 **zangyō teate** (zahn-gyohh teh-ah-teh) (*overtime pay*)

Negotiate with the employer so you comfortably work in a new workplace. If anything is difficult for you, explain the reasons so they can understand your situations.



To state a reason, say it in a sentence and add **kara** (kah-rah) (*because*) afterward. You can also add **desu** after **kara** to mean *It's because such and such*. Here are a few examples:

大学で経済学を専攻したからです。 **Daigaku de keizaigaku o senkō shita kara desu.** (dah-ee-gah-koo deh kehh-zah-ee-gah-koo oh sehn-kohh sheetah kah-rah deh-soo.) (*It's because I majored in economics in college.*)

英語を使う仕事に興味があるからです。 **Eigo o tsukau shigoto ni kyōmi ga aru kara desu.** (ehh-goh oh tsoo-kah-oo shee-goh-toh nee kyohhh-mee gah ah-roo kah-rah deh-soo.) (*It's because I'm interested in jobs that I can use English for.*)

Talkin' the Talk



Takeshi Sakai is desperately looking for a job. He's in the middle of his 19th job interview this month. (Track 28)

Interviewer: **Kyūryō wa amari takaku arimasen yo.**
 kyooo-ryohh wah ah-mah-ree tah-kah-koo ah-ree-mah-sehn yo.
We can't pay you well, all right?

Takeshi: **Ii desu.**
 eee deh-soo.
That's okay.

Interviewer: **Zangyō mo tokidoki arimasu yo.**
 zahn-gyohh moh toh-kee-doh-kee ah-ree-mah-soo yoh.
You'll have to work overtime sometimes.

- Takeshi: **Daijōbu desu.**
dah-ee-johh-boo deh-soo.
That's okay.
- Interviewer: **Kenkō hoken wa arimasen yo.**
kehn-kohh hoh-kehn wah ah-ree-mah-sehn yoh.
And you won't get health insurance.
- Takeshi: **Kodomo ga 3-nin imasu kara, sore wa chotto komarimasu.**
koh-doh-moh gah sahn-neen ee-mah-soo kah-rah,
soh-reh wah choht-toh koh-mah-ree-mah-soo.
That's a problem because I have three children.
- Interviewer: **Ā, sō desu ka. Sore wa komarimasu ne.**
ahh, sohh deh-soo kah. soh-reh wah koh-mah-ree-mah-soo neh.
Oh, really. That will be a problem.

Words to Know

kyūryō	kyooo-ryohh	salary
zangyō	zahn-gyohh	overtime work
tokidoki	toh-kee-doh-kee	sometimes
daijōbu (na)	dah-ee-johh-boo (nah)	okay, fine
kenkō hoken	kehn-kohh hoh-kehn	health insurance
kodomo	koh-doh-moh	child
komaru	koh-mah-roo	<i>to be a difficulty</i>

Addressing superiors and subordinates

Japan is very modern, but a shadow of feudalism still falls on workplaces. Case in point: Subordinates never address their superiors by their first names. If you work in Japan, address your superiors by using their titles and last names. So, if your superior is the company president and his last name is Smith, call him スミス社長 **Sumisu-shachō**, or simply **社長 shachō** (shah-chohhh).

Some titles Japanese companies use are as follows:

- ✓ 部長 **buchō** (boo-chohhh) (*department chief*)
- ✓ 副社長 **fukushachō** (foo-koo-shah-chohhh) (*company vice-president*)

- ✓ 課長 **kachō** (kah-chohhh) (*section chief*)
- ✓ 係長 **kakarichō** (kah-kah-ree-chohhh) (*sub-section chief*)
- ✓ 社長 **shachō** (shah-chohhh) (*company president*)

Address your subordinates by their last names, plus **-san** or **-kun**. In a business context, both **-san** (sahn) and **-kun** (koon) can be used for women and men. So if Mr. Smith is your assistant, call him **Sumisu-san** (soo-mee-soo-sahn) or **Sumisu-kun** (soo-mee-soo-koon).

Making Sense of Your Office Environment

If you're a full-time employee, you probably spend about one-third of your time each week at the office. If you're going to spend so much time at work, you'd better know the terms for basic office equipment, furniture, and supplies, as well as how to get around your office building.

Checking out the supplies

Many workplaces are home to numerous pieces of office equipment and furniture. Check whether you see these items at your workplace:

- ✓ 電話 **denwa** (dehn-wah) (*telephone*)
- ✓ デスクライト **desuku raito** (deh-soo-koo rah-ee-toh) or デスクランプ **desuku ranpu** (deh-soo-koo rahm-poo) (*desk lamp*)
- ✓ ゴミ箱 **gomibako** (goh-mee-bah-koh) (*wastebasket*)
- ✓ 本棚 **hondana** (hoahn-dah-nah) (*bookshelf*)
- ✓ 椅子 **isu** (ee-soo) (*chair*)
- ✓ カレンダー **karendā** (kah-rehn-dahh) (*calendar*)
- ✓ コピー機 **kopiki** (koh-peee-kee) (*copier*)
- ✓ ノートPC **nōto PC** (nohh-toh peeee-sheee) (*laptop computer*)

- ✓ パソコン **pasokon** (pah-soh-kohn) (*personal computer*)
- ✓ プリンター **purintā** (poo-reen-tahh) (*printer*)
- ✓ タブレット **taburetto** (tah-boo-reht-toh) (*tablet computer*)
- ✓ 机 **tsukue** (tsoo-koo-eh) (*desk*)

Look inside your desk drawers to see whether you have these office supplies:

- ✓ ボールペン **bōrupen** (bohh-roo-pehn) (*ballpoint pen*)
- ✓ 鉛筆 **enpitsu** (ehn-pee-tssoo) (*pencil*)
- ✓ 封筒 **fūtō** (foooh-tohh) (*envelope*)
- ✓ ホッチキス **hotchikisu** (hoht-chee-kee-soo) (*stapler*)
- ✓ 消しゴム **keshigomu** (keh-shee-goh-moo) (*eraser*)
- ✓ 糊 **nori** (noh-ree) (*glue*)
- ✓ ノート **nōto** (nohh-toh) (*notebook*)
- ✓ シャーペン **shāpen** (shahh-pehn) (*mechanical pencil*)
- ✓ 手帳 **techō** (teh-chohhh) (*planner*)
- ✓ セロテープ **serotēpu** (seh-roh-tehh-poo) (*cellophane tape*)



If you can't find a pen, an eraser, or a stapler, ask a colleague. He or she probably has one that you can use. Start by mentioning the item you need to borrow and including the topic particle **wa** (wah). Then use the verb **aru** (ah-roo) (*to exist*) to ask *Do you have?* (Using the verb *to exist* seems weird in this case, doesn't it? To see more examples of this strange use of the verb **aru**, flip to Chapter 7.) Add the polite suffix **-masu** (mah-soo) to the stem form of **aru**, as in **arimasu** (ah-ree-mah-soo), and make the phrase into a question by adding the question particle **ka** (kah), as in **arimasu ka** (ah-ree-mah-soo kah). Now you can start bothering your colleagues:

ホッチキスはありますか。 **Hotchikisu wa arimasu ka.** (hoht-chee-kee-soo wah ah-ree-mah-soo kah.) (*Do you have a stapler?*)

消しゴムはありますか。 **Keshigomu wa arimasu ka.** (keh-shee-goh-moo wah ah-ree-mah-soo kah.) (*Do you have an eraser?*)

Touring the rest of the building

Although you may be in the same room in the building every day, knowing the rest of the areas in the building is a good idea in case you need to help other people in the company. Here are helpful words to identify a variety of rooms and areas in your office building:

- ✓ 出口 **deguchi** (deh-goo-chee) (*exit*)
- ✓ エレベーター **erebētā** (eh-reh-behh-tahh) (*elevator*)
- ✓ 入り口 **iriguchi** (ee-ree-goo-chee) (*entrance*)
- ✓ 階段 **kaidan** (kah-ee-dahn) (*stairway*)
- ✓ 会議室 **kaigishitsu** (kah-ee-gee-shee-tsoo) (*conference room*)
- ✓ 警備室 **keibishitsu** (keh-ee-bee-shee-tsoo) (*security room*)
- ✓ 工場 **kōjō** (kohh-johh) (*factory*)
- ✓ ロビー **robī** (roh-beeee) (*lobby*)
- ✓ 廊下 **rōka** (rohh-kah) (*hallway*)
- ✓ 倉庫 **sōko** (sohh-koh) (*storage*)
- ✓ トイレ **toire** (toh-ee-reh) (*toilet*)



For pointers on referring to specific floors in your building, check out Chapter 10. You can read about using ordinal numbers in general in Chapter 5.

Phoning Made Simple

Telephones are an indispensable part of daily life, particularly in business settings. E-mails are also great, but they can't replace the sense of connection that you get from hearing another person's voice. The next sections give you the essential words and phrases that you need to have for telephone conversations in Japanese.

Brushing up on phone-related vocab

Before you get ready to make a call in Japanese, get used to the Japanese words and terms related to telephone equipment, systems, and accessories:

- ✓ 電話 **denwa** (dehn-wah) (*telephone*)
- ✓ 電話番号 **denwa-bangō** (dehn-wah-bahn-gohh) (*telephone number*)
- ✓ 電話帳 **denwachō** (dehn-wah-chohh) (*telephone book*)
- ✓ 携帯 (電話) **keitai(-denwa)** (kehh-tah-ee[-dehn-wah]) (*cellphone*)
- ✓ 留守番電話 **rusuban-denwa** (roo-soo-bahn-dehn-wah) (*answering machine*)
- ✓ ヴォイスメール **voisu-mēru** (voh-ee-soo-mehh-roo) (*voicemail*)

After you have a grip on the necessary vocabulary, you're ready to **denwa o kakeru** (dehn-wah oh kah-keh-roo) (*to make a phone call*). Here's how to conjugate the **ru**-verb **kakeru** (kah-keh-roo) (*to make [a phone call]*):

<i>Japanese Script</i>	<i>Rōmaji</i>	<i>Pronunciation</i>
かける	kakeru	kah-keh-roo
かけない	kakenai	kah-keh-nah-ee
かけ (ます)	kake(masu)	kah-keh(-mah-soo)
かけて	kakete	kah-keh-teh



Before you start talking, say **moshimoshi** (moh-shee-moh-shee). In Japanese, **moshimoshi** is a kind of line-testing phrase, like *Hello, are you there?* or *Can you hear me?* If the other party on the phone doesn't speak at all, say **moshimoshi** again. If you still don't hear anything, repeat it more loudly — **MOSHIMOSHI!!!** If you still don't hear anything, hang up!

Asking to speak with someone

Why do you make a phone call? Because you *want* to talk to someone, right? Oh, you want to talk with Mr. Mori? Here are a couple of different ways to try to get him.

- ✓ 森さんをお願いします。 **Mori-san o onegaishimasu.** (moh-ree-sahn oh oh-neh-gah-ee shee-mah-soo.) (*Mr. Mori, please.*)
- ✓ 森さんはいらっしゃいますか。 **Mori-san wa irasshaimasu ka.** (moh-ree-sahn wah ee-rahs-shah-ee-mah-soo kah.) (*Is Mr. Mori available?*)



Suppose you want to phrase your request as *I'd like to speak to Mr. Mori*. I have two confessions to make regarding how to express *to want* in Japanese. First, Japanese usually use an adjective, not a verb, to express *to want*. Second, Japanese use different adjectives to express *to want* depending on whether they want something (such as time, a friend, or a physical object) or want to do something.

To say that you want *something*, use the adjective **hoshii** (hoh-sheee) or its polite/neutral counterpart **hoshii desu** (hoh-sheee deh-soo). Place it at the end of the sentence and place the subject particle **ga** (gah) after the item that you want, as in the following examples:

私は車がほしいです。 **Watashi wa kuruma ga hoshii desu.** (wah-tah-shee wah koo-roo-mah gah hoh-sheee deh-soo.) (*I want a car.*)

私はお金がほしいです。 **Watashi wa o-kane ga hoshii desu.** (wah-tah-shee wah oh-kah-neh gah hoh-sheee deh-soo.) (*I want money.*)

何が一番ほしいですか。 **Nani ga ichiban hoshii desu ka.** (nah-nee gah ee-chee-bahn hoh-sheee deh-soo kah.) (*What do you want the most?*)

時間が一番ほしいです。 **Jikan ga ichiban hoshii desu.** (jee-kahn gah ee-chee-bahn hoh-sheee deh-soo.) (*I want time the most.*)

いい仕事がほしいです。 **Ii shigoto ga hoshii desu.** (eee shee-goh-toh gah hoh-sheee deh-soo.) (*I want a good job.*)

To say that you want to *do* something, simply add the suffix **-tai** (tah-ee) to the end of the stem form of a verb. For example, if you want to **neru** (neh-roo) (*to sleep*), say **ne-tai** (neh-tah-ee) (*to want to sleep*). Check out these examples:

私は休みたいです。 **Watashi wa yasumi-tai desu.** (wah-tah-shee wah yah-soo-mee-tah-ee deh-soo.) (*I want to take a day off.*)

今日はクラスに行きたくありません。 **Kyō wa kurasu ni ikitaku ari-masen.** (kyohh wah koo-rah-soo nee ee-kee-tah-koo ah-ree-mah-sehn.) (*I don't want to go to class today.*)

将来、何をしたいですか。 **Shōrai, nani o shi-tai desu ka.** (shohh-rah-ee, nah-nee oh shee-tah-ee deh-soo kah.) (*What do you want to do in the future?*)

うちに帰りたいです。 **Uchi ni kaeri-tai desu.** (oo-chee nee kah-eh-ree-tah-ee deh-soo.) (*I want to go home.*)

You can mark the object of the verb with either **o** or **ga** when the verb is combined with **-tai**. For example, **Kyō wa sutēki o tabe-tai desu.** (kyohh wah soo-tehh-kee oh tah-beh-tah-ee deh-soo.) (*I want to eat a steak today.*) can be **Kyō wa sutēki ga tabe-tai desu.** (kyohh wah soo-tehh-kee gah tah-beh-tah-ee deh-soo.).



When you tell someone what you want, you should end your statement with **-n-desu ga** (n-deh-soo gah). Doing so injects a nice, friendly, and cooperative attitude into your statement. The function of **-n-desu** is to show your willingness to hear the other person's response to what you're saying. (See Chapter 5 for more on using **-n-desu**.) The last **ga** is actually the sentence-ending particle that means *but*. So, you're literally saying *I want to do such and such, but*. What you actually mean is something like *I want to do such and such, but is it okay with you?*

Suppose you call a hotel to make a reservation. If you say **yoyaku o shitai desu** (yoh-yah-koo oh shee-tah-ee deh-soo), it just means *I want to make a reservation*. But phrasing your statement this way sounds too blunt in Japanese, and you almost sound like you're making a protest or stating a demand. By contrast, if you say **yoyaku o shitai-n-desu ga** (yoh-yah-koo oh shee-tah-een-deh-soo gah), it means something like *I'd like to make a reservation, but could you help me with it?* Now, your statement sounds soft, and you're kindly inviting the hotel clerk's reply.

That's the kind of tone you want to use when asking to talk to your business contact Mr. Mori (remember him?), so you express that request by saying **Mori-san o onegai shi-tai-n-desu ga.** (moh-ree-sahn oh oh-neh-gah-ee shee-tah-een-deh-soo gah.) (*I'd like to talk with Mr. Mori, but is he available?*)

Check out these examples that contain a more realistic translation of three statements that use **-n-desu ga**:

予約を確認したいんですが。 **Yoyaku o kakunin shi-tai-n-desu ga.** (yoh-yah-koo oh kah-koo-neen shee-tah-een-deh-soo gah.) (*I'd like to confirm the reservation, but is it okay with you?*)

営業時間を知りたいんですが。 **Eigyō jikan o shiri-tai-n-desu ga.** (ehh-gyohh jee-kahn oh shee-ree-tah-een-deh-soo gah.) (*I'd like to know your business hours, but could you help me with this?*)

ちょっとお尋ねしたいんですが。 **Chotto otazune shi-tai-n-desu ga.** (choht-toh oh-tah-zoo-neh shee-tah-een deh-soo gah.) (*I'd like to ask you about something, but is it okay?*)

Calling your client

When you call your business clients, remember that you're representing your company. That's the Japanese way to make a business call. Don't forget to mention the name of your company first, before mentioning your own name. Instead of saying *This is Mr. White*, for example, say *This is ABC Technology's Mr. White*.

Greet your client and his or her secretary with **O-sewa ni natte orimasu.** (oh-seh-wah nee naht-teh oh-ree-mah-soo.) (*Thank you for doing business with us.*) This line is one of the essential set phrases in Japanese business.



When you ask for your call to be transferred to a specific person, don't forget to specify his title and department. This little tip is important, especially when more than one person in the company has the same last name.

Talkin' the Talk



Patrick White at ABC Technology has just prepared an estimate for his client, Mr. Tanaka, at Yamada Denki, Inc. Patrick is calling Mr. Tanaka to tell him about the quote. (Track 29)

Secretary: **Yamada Denki de gozaimasu.**
yah-mah-dah dehn-kee deh goh-zah-ee-mah-soo.
This is Yamada Denki, Inc.

Patrick: **ABC Tekunorojī no Howaito desu. Itsumo o-sewa ni natte orimasu.**
ehh-beee-sheee teh-koo-noh-roh-jeee noh hoh-wah-ee-toh deh-soo. ee-tsoo-moh oh-seh-wah nee naht-teh oh-ree-mah-soo.
This is Mr. White from ABC Technology. Thank you for doing business with us.

Secretary: **Kochira koso o-sewa ni natte orimasu.**
koh-chee-rah koh-soh oh-seh-wah nee naht-teh
oh-ree-mah-soo.
Thank you, too.

Patrick: **Anō, eigyō-bu no Tanaka buchō-sama wa irass-haimasu ka.**
ah-nohh, ehh-gyohh-booh noh tah-nah-kah boo-chohh-sah-mah wah ee-rahs-shah-ee-mah-soo ka.
Umm, is Mr. Tanaka, the head of the sales division, available?

Secretary: **Hai, shōshō o-machi kudasai.**
hah-ee, shohh-shohh oh-mah-chee koo-dah-sah-ee.
Yes. Could you hold on please?

Patrick: **Hai.**
hah-ee.
Sure.

Tanaka: **Moshimoshi, omatase shimashita. Tanaka desu.**
moh-shee-moh-shee, oh-mah-tah-seh shee-mah-shee-tah. tah-nah-kah deh-soo.
Hello, sorry to have kept you waiting. This is Mr. Tanaka speaking.

Patrick: **Ā, Tanaka-buchō. Howaito desu. Itsumo o-sewa ni natte orimasu.**
ahh, tah-nah-kah-boo-chohh. hoh-wah-ee-toh deh-soo. ee-tsoo-moh oh-seh-wah nee naht-teh
oh-ree-mah-soo.
Oh, Division Chief Tanaka. This is Mr. White. I appreciate your doing business with us all this time.

Tanaka: **Īe, kochira koso.**
eee-eh, koh-chee-rah koh-soh.
No, no. It is we who should say that.

Patrick: **Anō, mitsumorisho ga dekimashita.**
ah-nohh, mee-tsoo-moh-ree-shoh gah deh-kee-mah-shee-tah gah.
Well, the quote is ready.

Words to Know

Itsumo o-sewa ni natte orimasu.	<i>ee-tsoo-moh oh-seh-wah nee naht-teh oh-ree-mah-soo.</i>	Thank you for doing business with us.
Shōshō o-machi kudasai.	<i>shohh-shohh oh-mah-chee koo-dah-sah-ee.</i>	Could you hold on please?
Moshimoshi.	<i>moh-shee-moh-shee</i>	Hello.
Omatase shimashita.	<i>oh-mah-tah-seh shee-mah-shee-tah.</i>	Sorry to have kept you waiting.
mitsumorisho	<i>mee-tsoo-moh-ree-sho</i>	quote
dekiru	<i>deh-kee-roo</i>	to be completed

Leaving a message

Many people's workdays are filled with meetings, deadlines, and can't-miss appointments that keep them from answering their phones — which means you're probably going to have to leave a message for someone at some point in your career. You may leave a message on a voicemail or with a person (such as a secretary or assistant).

To talk about leaving messages, conjugate the **u**-verb **nokosu** (noh-koh-soo), which means *to leave* in the sense of leaving a message but not *to leave* in the sense of going away or departing.

<i>Japanese Script</i>	<i>Rōmaji</i>	<i>Pronunciation</i>
残す	nokosu	noh-koh-soo
残さない	nokosanai	noh-koh-sah-nah-ee
残し (ます)	nokoshi(masu)	noh-koh-shee(-mah-soo)
残して	nokoshite	noh-koh-shee-teh

On someone's voicemail

When you leave a message on an answering machine, you need to give the other party all the information necessary to understand your call. Specifically, make sure you clarify which person will call the other back. Here are a few phrases to help you do just that:

- ✓ 後ほどお電話を下さい。 **Nochihodo o-denwa o kudasai.** (noh-chee-hoh-doh oh-dehn-wah oh koo-dah-sah-ee.) (*Please give me a call later.*)
- ✓ またお電話を致します。 **Mata o-denwa o itashimasu.** (mah-tah oh-dehn-wah oh ee-tah-shee-mah-soo.) (*I'll call you again.*)

With a person

When you leave a message with a person, be clear about what you want and always use polite phrases such as the following:

- ✓ 電話があつたことをお伝えください。 **Denwa ga atta koto o o-tsutae kudasai.** (dehn-wah gah aht-tah koh-toh oh oh-tsoo-tah-eh koo-dah-sah-ee.) (*Please tell him/her that I called.*)
- ✓ またこちらからお電話を致します。 **Mata kochira kara o-denwa o itashimasu.** (mah-tah koh-chee-rah kah-rah oh-dehn-wah oh ee-tah-shee-mah-soo.) (*I'll call him/her again.*)
- ✓ お電話を頂きたいんですが。 **O-denwa o itadakitai-n-desu ga.** (oh-dehn-wah oh ee-tah-dah-kee-tah-een-deh-soo gah.) (*Would you kindly ask him/her to please call me back?*)
- ✓ またお電話致しますとお伝え下さい。 **Mata o-denwa itashimasu to o-tsutae kudasai.** (mah-tah o-dehn-wah ee-tah-shee-mah-soo toh oh-tsoo-tah-eh koo-dah-sah-ee.) (*Please let him/her know that I'll call again tomorrow.*)
- ✓ 少し遅れると伝えてください。 **Sukoshi okureru to tsutaete kudasai.** (soo-koh-shee oh-koo-reh-roo toh tsoo-tah-eh-teh koo-dah-sah-ee.) (*Please tell him/her that I'll be a little late.*)



The particle **to**, as in **to tsutaete kudasai** in the last example sentence in the preceding list, is a quotation particle. Place it right after your message to indicate what your message is. Use it with the verbs **iu** (ee-oo) (*to say*), **kaku** (kah-koo) (*to write*), and **tsutaeru** (tsoo-tah-eh-roo) (*to report/tell*), as in the following examples:

一万円借りたと書きました。 **10,000-en karita to kakimashita.** (ee-chee-mahn-ehn kah-ree-tah toh kah-kee-mah-shee-tah.) (*I wrote that I borrowed 10,000 yen.*)

田中さんは来ると言いました。 **Tanaka-san wa kuru to iimashita.** (tah-nah-kah-sahn wah koo-roo toh eee-mah-shee-tah.) (*Mr. Tanaka said that he'll come.*)

また来ますと伝えてください。 **Mata kimasu to tsutaete kudasai.** (mah-tah kee-mah-soo toh tsoo-tah-eh-teh koo-dah-sah-ee.) (*Could you tell him/her that I'll come again?*)

You can also use the quotation particle **to** with the verb **omou** (oh-moh-oo) (*to think*) to mark the content of what a person thinks.

翻訳は来週までにできると思います。 **Hon'yaku wa raishū made ni dekiru to omoimasu.** (hohn-yah-koo wah rah-ee-shooo mah-deh nee deh-kee-roo toh oh-moh-ee-mah-soo.) (*I think that the translation can be completed by next week.*)

田中さんは来ないと思います。 **Tanaka-san wa konai to omoimasu.** (tah-nah-kah-sahn wah koh-nah-ee toh oh-moh-ee-mah-soo.) (*I think Mr. Tanaka will not come.*)



Go- (goh) is another polite prefix, just like **o-** (oh), which I tell you about in Chapter 4. You can add **go-** to the beginning of a noun to refer respectfully to other people's items. Typically, you use **go-** with words of Chinese origin and **o-** with native Japanese words; however, too many exceptions exist, so you just have to memorize which prefix goes with which nouns. Check out some business-related examples:

- ✓ 御注文 **go-chūmon** (goh-chooo-mohn) (*order*)
- ✓ 御伝言 **go-dengon** (goh-dehn-gohn) (*message*)
- ✓ 御住所 **go-jūsho** (goh-jooo-shoh) (*address*)
- ✓ 御職業 **go-shokugyō** (goh-shoh-koo-gyohh) (*occupation*)
- ✓ 御招待 **go-shōtai** (goh-shohh-tah-ee) (*invitation*)
- ✓ お電話 **o-denwa** (oh-dehn-wah) (*telephone*)
- ✓ お電話番号 **o-denwa-bangō** (oh-dehn-wah-bahn-gohh) (*telephone number*)
- ✓ お客様 **o-kyaku-sama** (oha-kyah-koo-sah-mah) (*customer*)
- ✓ お名前 **o-namae** (oh-nah-mah-eh) (*name*)



As I note in Chapter 10, the particle **ga** means *but* when placed after a sentence. It usually shows contrast, conflict, or contradiction just like *but* does in English, but **ga** can also mean almost nothing, simply marking a transition from one statement to another. The typical situation where you use **ga** as a transition marker is when one person telephones another person. In Japan, you need to say your own name first before asking for someone on the phone, so the particle **ga** is essential for smoothly beginning a telephone conversation. For example, if Mr. Smith wants to talk with Mr. Tanaka, he would first say his name and ask for Mr. Tanaka, as in **Sumisu desu ga, Tanaka-san wa irasshaimasu ka.** (soo-mee-soo deh-soo gah, tah-nah-kah sahn wah ee-rahs-shah-ee-mah-soo kah.) (*I'm Mr. Smith. Is Mr. Tanaka there?*)

Talkin' the Talk



Jake Brown is a private English tutor. He tries to call his student, Makoto Isobe. (Track 30)

Mrs. Isobe: **Hai, Isobe desu.**
hah-ee, ee-soh-beh deh-soo.
Yes, this is the Isobe residence.

Jake: **Buraun desu ga, Makoto-san wa irasshaimasu ka.**
boo-rah-oon deh-soo gah, mah-koh-toh-sahn wah
ee-rahs-shah-ee-mah-soo ka.
This is Mr. Brown. Is Makoto available?

Mrs. Isobe: **Sumimasen. Chotto dekakete imasu. Nanika go-den-gon wa.**
soo-mee-mah-sehn. choht-toh deh-kah-keh-teh ee-mah-soo. nah-nee-kah goh-dehn-gohn wah.
I'm sorry, but he's out. May I take a message?

Jake: **Jā, ashita mata denwa o shimasu to tsutaete kudasai.**
jahh, ah-shee-tah mah-tah dehn-wah oh shee-mah-soo toh tsoo-tah-eh-teh koo-dah-sah-ee.
Okay, could you tell him that I'll call him again tomorrow?

Mrs. Isobe: **Hai, wakarimashita.**
hah-ee, wah-kah-ree-mah-shee-tah.
Sure, certainly.

Jake: **Jā, yoroshiku onegai shimasu.**
jahh, yoh-roh-shee-koo oh-neh-gah-ee shee-mah-soo.
Thanks. (Literally: Thank you for doing me a favor.)

Words to Know

dekakete iru	deh-kah-keh-teh ee-roo	to be out, to have gone out
nanika	nah-nee-kah	something
ashita	ah-shee-tah	tomorrow
wakaru	wah-kah-roo	to understand

Catching Up on Computing Basics

Computers are an indispensable communication tool in the business world, which means you need to know how to talk about them in Japanese. I provide you with the basic terms for computers, computer programs, and e-mailing in the following sections.

Familiarizing yourself with computer terms

Most Japanese call their computers **pasokon** (pah-soh-kohn), which is the abbreviation of *personal computers*. Most computer-related words are from English, but make sure to pronounce them with a Japanese accent. Try some of them:

- ✓ C D CD (sheee-deeee) (CD)
- ✓ デスクトップパソコン **desukutoppu-pasokon** (deh-soo-koo-tohp-poo-pah-soh-kohn) (*desktop computer*)
- ✓ ディスプレイ・モニター **disupurei-monitā** (dee-soo-poo-rehh-moh-nee-tahh) (*display monitor*)
- ✓ D V D DVD (deee-boo-ee-deeee) (DVD)
- ✓ ハードディスク **hādodisuku** (hahh-doh-dee-soo-koo) (*hard disk*)
- ✓ キーボード **kibōdo** (keee-bohh-doh) (*keyboard*)
- ✓ マウス **mausu** (mah-oo-soo) (*mouse*)
- ✓ U S B メモリー **USB memorī** (yooo-eh-soo-beeee meh-moh-reeee) (*flash drive*)
- ✓ モデム **modemu** (moh-deh-moo) (*modem*)
- ✓ ノートパソコン **nōto-pasokon** (nohh-toh-pah-soh-kohn) (*laptop*)
- ✓ パソコン **pasokon** (pah-soh-kohn) (*personal computer*)
- ✓ プリンター **purintā** (poo-reen-tahh) (*printer*)
- ✓ スキャナー **sukyanā** (soo-kyah-nahh) (*scanner*)
- ✓ スピーカー **supīkā** (soo-peeee-kahh) (*speakers*)
- ✓ ウェブカメラ **webu-kamera** (weh-boo-kah-meh-rah) (*webcam*)

The following words help you talk about the actions you perform and the programs you use on your computer, including Microsoft Word, Excel, and PowerPoint:

- ✓ ブラウザ **buraaza** (boo-rah-oo-zah) (*browser*)
- ✓ ブログ **burogu** (boo-roh-goo) (*blog*)
- ✓ エクセル **ekuseru** (eh-koo-seh-roo) (*Excel*)

- ✓ ホームページ **hōmupēji** (hohh-moo-pehh-jee) (*homepage*)
- ✓ インターネット **intānetto** (een-tahhh-neht-toh) (*Internet*)
- ✓ メール **mēru** (mehhh-roo) (*e-mails*)
- ✓ パワーポイント **pawāpointo** (pah-wahh-poh-een-toh) (*PowerPoint*)
- ✓ ウェブサイト **webusaito** (weh-boo-sah-ee-toh) (*website*)
- ✓ ワード **wādo** (wahh-doh) (*Word*)

Sending e-mail

I love e-mail (**mēru**) (mehhh-roo) because I can send or read it whenever I want. Here're basic terms you need to use this convenient tool, both in the workplace and in the comfort of your home:

- ✓ 返信する **henshin suru** (hehn-sheen soo-roo) (*to reply to an e-mail*)
- ✓ 受信する **jushin suru** (joo-sheen soo-roo) (*to receive an e-mail*)
- ✓ 迷惑メール **meiwaku-mēru** (meh-ee-wah-koo-mehhh-roo) (*spam mail*)
- ✓ メールアドレス **mēru-adoresu** (mehhh-roo-ah-doh-reh-soo) (*e-mail address*)
- ✓ パスワード **pasuwādo** (pah-soo-wahh-doh) (*password*)
- ✓ ログアウト **roguauto** (roh-goo-ah-oo-toh) (*logout*)
- ✓ ログイン **roguin** (roh-goo-een) (*login*)
- ✓ 送信する **sōshin suru** (sohh-sheen soo-roo) (*to send an e-mail*)
- ✓ 添付する **tenpu suru** (tehn-poo soo-roo) (*to attach*)

Social media, Japanese-style

Methods of communication have changed greatly because of advances in technology. Nowadays, young people keep in contact with others, exchange ideas, and make plans through a variety of social networking sites. Here are some Japanese terms for taking advantage of social media tools:

- ✓ ブログ **burogu** (boo-roh-goo) (*blog*)
- ✓ チャット **chatto** (chaht-toh) (*chat, chatting*)
- ✓ フェイスブック **feisubukku** (feh-ee-soo-book-koo) (*Facebook*)
- ✓ フォローする **forō suru** (foh-rohh soo-roo) (*to follow*)
- ✓ ポストする **posuto suru** (poh-soo-toh soo-roo) (*to post*)
- ✓ ツイートする **tsuitō suru** (tsoo-eee-toh soo-roo) (*to tweet*)
- ✓ ツイッター **tsuittā** (tsoo-eet-tahh) (*Twitter*)

Having Meetings in the Workplace

As long as you're engaged in business, you'll be exposed to meetings (regardless of their size and frequency). Here are some words and phrases you need to talk about meetings:

- ✓ 議題 **gidai** (gee-dah-ee) (*agenda*)
- ✓ 議事録 **gijiroku** (gee-jee-roh-koo) (*minutes*)
- ✓ ホワイトボード **howaito bōdo** (hoh-wah-ee-toh bohh-doh) (*whiteboard*)
- ✓ 会議 **kaigi** (kah-ee-gee) (*meeting, conference*)
- ✓ 会議で話し合う **kaigi de hanashi-au** (kah-ee-gee deh han-nah-shee-ah-oo) (*to discuss at the meeting*)
- ✓ 会議で決める **kaigi de kimeru** (kah-ee-gee deh kee-meh-roo) (*to decide at the meeting*)
- ✓ 会議に出席する **kaigi ni deru** (kah-ee-gee nee deh-roo) (*to attend the meeting*)
- ✓ 会議をする **kaigi o suru** (kah-ee-gee oh soo-roo) (*to hold a meeting*)
- ✓ コンファレンス **konfarensu** (kohn-fah-rehn-soo) (*conference*)
- ✓ コンファレンスコール **konfarensu kōru** (kohn-fah-rehn-soo kohh-roo) (*conference call*)
- ✓ プロジェクター **purojekutā** (poo-roh-jeh-koo-tahh) (*projector*)



Fun & Games

Match each Japanese term with the correct office item marked in the illustration.
Flip to Appendix D for the answers.

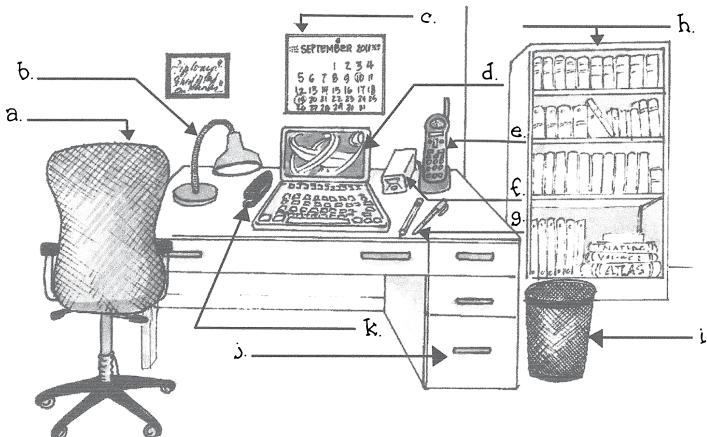


Illustration by Elizabeth Kurtzman

- | | |
|------------------------|---------------------|
| 1. 電話 denwa | a. chair |
| 2. カレンダー karendā | b. desk lamp |
| 3. ホッキス hotchikisu | c. calendar |
| 4. 机 tsukue | d. computer |
| 5. 椅子 isu | e. telephone |
| 6. デスクランプ desuku ranpu | f. pencil sharpener |
| 7. パソコン pasokon | g. pen |
| 8. ペン pen | h. bookshelves |
| 9. 本棚 hondana | i. wastebasket |
| 10. ゴミ箱 gomibako | j. desk |
| 11. 鉛筆削り enpitsukezuri | k. stapler |

Chapter 13

Recreation and the Great Outdoors

In This Chapter

- ▶ Expressing *to do* with **suru** and showing off what you can do
- ▶ Finding a hobby
- ▶ Getting back to nature in all seasons
- ▶ Playing sports and games
- ▶ Being artistic

No matter how much you love your job, your life can't be entirely healthy if it consists only of work, so make a goal to set some time aside for **rikurieishon** (ree-koo-ree-ehh-shohn) (*recreation*). This chapter explains how to talk about **rikurieishon** in Japanese, from engaging in hobbies and enjoying nature to playing sports and games and exploring your musical and artistic talents.

Using the Verb Suru (To Do)

The verb **suru** (soo-roo) (*to do*) is the most frequently used verb in Japanese. You can use **suru** for talking about doing many different types of recreational activities discussed in this chapter. To start with, conjugate the irregular verb **suru** as follows:

<i>Japanese Script</i>	<i>Rōmaji</i>	<i>Pronunciation</i>
する	suru	soo-roo
しない	shinai	shee-nah-ee
し (ます)	shi(masu)	shee(-mah-soo)
して	shite	shee-teh

You can use **suru** to express many recreational activities, from sports to sightseeing:

- ✓ 電話をする **denwa o suru** (dehn-wah oh soo-roo) (*to telephone someone*)
- ✓ 買い物をする **kaimono o suru** (kah-ee-moh-noh oh soo-roo) (*to do the shopping*)

- ✓ 観光をする **kankō o suru** (kahn-kohh oh soo-roo) (*to go sightseeing*)
- ✓ 空手をする **karate o suru** (kah-rah-teh oh soo-roo) (*to do karate*)
- ✓ 料理をする **ryōri o suru** (ryohh-ree oh soo-roo) (*to cook*)
- ✓ テニスをする **tenisu o suru** (teh-nee-soo oh soo-roo) (*to play tennis*)
- ✓ トランプをする **toranpu o suru** (toh-rahn-poo oh soo-roo) (*to play cards*)
- ✓ 釣りをする **tsuri o suru** (tsoo-ree oh soo-roo) (*to fish*)
- ✓ 山登りをする **yamanobori o suru** (yah-mah-noh-boh-ree o soo-roo) (*to mountain climb*)

The verb **suru** also follows some English loan words. These words are pretty easy to understand even without the translation.

- ✓ チェックする **chekku suru** (chehk-koo soo-roo) (*to check*)
- ✓ キャンセルする **kyanseru suru** (kyahn-seh-roo soo-roo) (*to cancel*)
- ✓ リラックスする **rirakkusu suru** (ree-rahk-koo-soo soo-roo) (*to relax*)

Saying “I Can”



Sorry, Japanese doesn't have a convenient word like *can*. To say that you *can do* something rather than that you *do* something, add a suffix (**-eru** or **-rareru**) to the verb. You need to do a little surgery on the verb to securely attach the suffix. (Don't worry; verbs don't bleed.) The particular suffix and the amount of verb surgery necessary both depend on the class of the verb.

- ✓ If the verb is an **u**-verb, remove the **u** at the end of the verb in the dictionary form and add **-eru**. For example, **aruku** (ah-roo-koo) (*to walk*) is an **u**-verb. Removing the final **u** and adding **-eru** gives you **arukeru** (ah-roo-keh-roo). **Aruku** means *I walk*, but **arukeru** means *I can walk*.
- ✓ If the verb is a **ru**-verb, remove the **ru** at the end of the verb in the dictionary form and add **-rareru**. For example, the verb **okiru** (oh-kee-roo) (*to sit up*) is a **ru**-verb. Removing the **ru** and adding **-rareru** gives you **okirareru** (oh-kee-rah-reh-roo). **Okirareru** means *I can sit up*.

The only necessary sound adjustment in this whole process is to change **ts** to **t** before adding **-eru**. So the *can* form of the verb **motsu** (moh-tssoo) (*to hold*) is **moteru** (moh-teh-roo) (*can hold*), not **motseru** (moh-tseh-roo). That doesn't mean that **motsu** is an irregular verb; it's actually regular. **Tse** (tseh) just isn't an authentic Japanese sound, so it gets simplified to **te** (teh). That's a reasonable and minor sound adjustment, right?

Two of the major irregular verbs, **suru** (see the preceding section) and **kuru** (koo-roo) (*to come*), undergo major changes in the *can* situation. The *can*

form of the verb **suru** is actually a substitution with the verb **dekiru** (deh-kee-roo) (*can do*). The *can* form of **kuru** is **korareru** (koh-rah-reh-roo) (*can come*).



When you use the *can* form of a verb in a sentence, replace the direct object particle **o** (oh) with the particle **ga** (gah). (See Chapter 3 for more on the particles **o** and **ga**.) I know — it's not a subject, but you mark it with the particle **ga** anyway. Strange, isn't it? So **Sushi o tsukuru**. (soo-shee oh tsoo-koo-roo.) means *You make sushi*, but **Sushi ga tsukureru**. (soo-shee gah tsoo-koo-reh-roo.) means *You can make sushi*. After you create a can-form, such as **tsukureru**, treat it as an independent verb and conjugate it as a **ru**-verb. Right, **tsukureru**, **tsukurenai**, **tsukure(masu)**, and **tsukutte!** (For a refresher on how to conjugate **ru**-verbs, check out Chapter 3.) These examples help you express who can and can't do what:

アダムは空手ができます。 **Adamu wa karate ga dekimasu.** (ah-dah-moo wah kah-rah-teh gah deh-kee-mah-soo.) (*Adam can do karate.*)

私は箸が使えません。 **Watashi wa hashi ga tsukaemasen.** (wah-tah-shee wah hah-shee gah tsoo-kah-eh-mah-sehn.) (*I can't use chopsticks.*)

父は日本語が話せません。 でも, 中国語が話せます。 **Chichi wa Nihongo ga hanasemesen. Demo, Chūgokugo ga hanasemasu.** (chee-chee wah nee-hohn-goh gah han-nah-seh-mah-sehn. deh-moh, chooo-goh-koo-goh gah hah-nah-seh-mah-soo.) (*My father can't speak Japanese. However, he can speak Chinese.*)



What? You can only speak English? To say *only* in Japanese, you add the particle **shika** (shee-kah) to the end of the noun and make the verb negative. (Don't forget to make the verb negative because **shika** and the negative verb together are what mean *only*.) Also, if **shika** follows the subject particle **ga** or the object particle **o**, you drop the particle; other particles stay, as the following examples show:

私は英語しか話せません。 **Watashi wa eigo shika hanasemesen.** (wah-tah-shee wah ehh-goh shee-kah hah-nah-seh-mah-sehn.) (*I can only speak English.*)

田中さんしか来られませんでした。 **Tanaka-san shika koraremasendeshita.** (tah-nah-kah-sahn shee-kah koh-rah-reh-mah-sehn-deh-shee-tah.) (*Only Mr. Tanaka could come.*)

明子さんは野菜しか食べられません。 **Akiko-san wa yasai shika taberaremasen.** (ah-keeh-koh-sahn wah yah-sah-ee shee-kah tah-beh-rah-reh-mah-sehn.) (*Akiko can only eat vegetables.*)

ふぐはレストランでしか食べません。 **Fugu wa resutoran de shika tabemasen.** (foo-goo wah reh-soo-toh-rahn deh shee-kah tah-beh-mah-sehn.) (*I eat blowfish at a restaurant only.*)

テニスは父としかしません。 **Tenisu wa chichi to shika shimasen.** (teh-nee-soo wah chee-chee toh shee-kah shee-mah-sehn.) (*I play tennis with my father only.*)

Discussing Your Hobbies

If you get to know a Japanese person socially, he or she may ask you, **Shumi wa.** (shoo-mee wah.) (*What's your hobby?*). Having at least one **shumi** (shoo-mee) (*hobby*) that you can proudly talk about is nice. Is your **shumi** athletic, artistic, or academic in nature? Or is it just amusing? Perhaps you do one of the following activities — all of which are nouns, by the way:

- ✓ 盆栽 **bonsai** (bohn-sah-ee) (*bonsai [creating miniature trees]*)
- ✓ 読書 **dokusho** (doh-koo-shoh) (*reading*)
- ✓ 絵 e (eh) (*drawing and painting*)
- ✓ ゴルフ **gorufu** (goh-roo-foo) (*golf*)
- ✓ 切手のコレクション **kitte no korekushon** (keet-teh noh koh-reh-koo-shohn) (*stamp collecting*)
- ✓ 料理 **ryōri** (ryohh-ree) (*cooking*)
- ✓ 水泳 **suiei** (soo-ee-ehh) (*swimming*)
- ✓ 釣り **tsuri** (tsoo-ree) (*fishing*)



If you want to use a verb to specify your hobby (that is, you want to use the verb for *to swim* rather than the noun *swimming*), just say the verb and add **koto** (koh-toh) at the end. **Koto** means something like *fact* or *matter*, but it doesn't have any specific meaning by itself. It just makes a preceding verb noun-like. So to say *My hobby is swimming*, you can use either of the following phrases:

趣味は水泳です。 **Shumi wa suiei desu.** (shoo-mee wah soo-ee-ehh deh-soo.)

趣味は泳ぐことです。 **Shumi wa oyogu koto desu.** (shoo-mee wah oh-yoh-goo koh-toh deh-soo.)

My friend's hobby is reading. He reads books, magazines, dictionaries, and anything else that he can get his hands on, including the nutritional information on cereal boxes, the lists of chemicals in his wife's cosmetic goods, and even entire software manuals. Use the following table to conjugate the **u**-verb **yomu** (yoh-moo) (*to read*) for him.

<i>Japanese Script</i>	<i>Rōmaji</i>	<i>Pronunciation</i>
読む	yomu	yoh-moo
読まない	yomanai	yoh-mah-nah-ee
読み（ます）	yomi(masu)	yoh-mee(-mah-soo)
読んで	yonde	yohn-deh

Talkin' the Talk



Michio is getting to know Joanna at an informal party at a mutual friend's house. (Track 31)

Michio: **Joana-san. Shumi wa nan desu ka.**
 joh-ah-nah-sahn. shoo-mee wah nahn deh-soo kah.
Joanna, what's your hobby?

Joanna: **Shumi wa dokusho desu.**
 shoo-mee wah doh-koo-shoh deh-soo.
My hobby is reading.

Michio: **Hē. Sugoi desu ne.**
 hehh. soo-goh-ee deh-soo neh.
Wow, that's great.

Joanna: **Sō desu ka. Michio-san no shumi wa.**
 sohh deh-soo kah. mee-chee-oh-sahn noh
 shoo-mee wah.
Really? How about yours, Michio?

Michio: **Boku no shumi wa taberu koto desu!**
 boh-koo noh shoo-mee wah tah-beh-roo koh-toh
 deh-soo!
My hobby is eating!

Words to Know

shumi	shoo-mee	hobby
dokusho	doh-koo-sho	reading
sugoi	soo-goh-ee	great
taberu	tah-beh-roo	to eat

Exploring Nature

If you're tired of working in front of your computer, give your eyes a change of pace and take a trip to the mountains or the beach. You discover the words and phrases that let you explore **shizen** (shee-zehn) (*nature*) in the following sections.

Taking in the landscape

When you head outside for a little R and R, you may want to enjoy a few of the following places:

- ✓ ビーチ **bichi** (beee-chee) (*beach*)
- ✓ 海岸 **kaigan** (kah-ee-gahn) (*shoreline*)
- ✓ 川 **kawa** (kah-wah) (*river*)
- ✓ 火山 **kazan** (kah-zahn) (*volcano*)
- ✓ 湖 **mizuumi** (mee-zoo-oo-mee) (*lake*)
- ✓ 山脈 **sanmyaku** (sahn-myah-koo) (*mountain range*)
- ✓ 瀧 **taki** (tah-kee) (*waterfall*)
- ✓ 海 **umi** (oo-mee) (*sea/ocean*)
- ✓ 山 **yama** (yah-mah) (*mountain*)

Beyond admiring the scenery, you may want to do one of the following activities:

- ✓ ハイキング **haikingu** (hah-ee-keen-goo) (*hiking*)
- ✓ キャンプ **kyanpu** (kyahn-poo) (*camping*)
- ✓ サイクリング **saikuringu** (sah-ee-koo-reen-goo) (*cycling*)

Changing with the seasons

When you want to explore nature, the season is the most important factor to take into account. Does your part of the world have **shiki** (shee-kee) (*four seasons*)? The four seasons are

- ✓ 春 **haru** (hah-roo) (*spring*)
- ✓ 夏 **natsu** (nah-tsoo) (*summer*)
- ✓ 秋 **aki** (ah-kee) (*fall*)
- ✓ 冬 **fuyu** (foo-yoo) (*winter*)



Enjoying the four seasons in Japan

Like most of North America, Japan has four seasons. To take advantage of the best Japan has to offer, follow this seasonal mini-tour of things to do on the Japanese islands.

- ✓ In spring, don't miss 花見 hanami (hah-nah-mee) (*flower viewing*).
 - ✓ In summer, go to the countryside and experience 盆祭り Bon matsuri (bohn mah-tsoo-ree) (*Bon festivals*) and 盆踊り Bon odori (bohn oh-doh-ree) (*Bon dancing*),
- where you can dance with the crowd. (*Bon* is the Buddhist festival of the dead.)
- ✓ In fall, drive around in the mountains and enjoy 紅葉 kōyō (kohh-yohh) (*the changing of leaves' colors*).
 - ✓ In winter, go to 雪祭り yukimatsuri (yoo-kee-mah-tsoo-ree) (*the snow festival*) in 北海道 Hokkaidō (hohk-kah-ee-dohh) (*Hokkaido*) and see the huge, magnificent snow sculptures.



If you want to make a suggestion (for example, swimming, singing, diving, and traveling), take the stem form of a verb and add one of these verb suffixes:

- ✓ -masen ka (mah-sehn kah) (*why don't we*), as in **Gorufu o shimasen ka.** (goh-roo-foo oh shee-mah-sehn ka.) (*Why don't we play golf?*)
- ✓ -mashō (mah-shohh) (*let's*), as in **Gorufu o shimashō!** (goh-roo-foo oh shee-mah-shohh!) (*Let's play golf!*)

Examples of these two endings are in the nearby Talkin' the Talk dialogue.



You can ask for permission by using a verb in the **te-form** and adding **mo ii desu ka** to it. If you're giving permission, adding the sentence final particle **yo** (yoh) after **mo ii desu** is nice; it shows your willingness. (Turn to Chapter 3 for more about the particle **yo**.) For example,

泳いでもいいですか。 **Oyoide mo ii desu ka.** (oh-yoh-ee-deh moh eee deh-soo kah.) (*Is it okay to swim?*)

泳いでもいいですよ。 **Oyoide mo ii desu yo.** (oh-yoh-ee-deh moh eee deh-soo yoh.) (*You may swim.*)

ピアノを弾いてもいいですよ。 **Piano o hiite mo ii desu yo.** (pee-ah-noh oh heee-teh moh eee deh-soo yoh.) (*It's okay to play the piano.*)

To express prohibition, saying *must not*, add **wa ikemasen** rather than **mo ii desu**, as in the following examples:

泳いではいけません。 **Oyoide wa ikemasen.** (oh-yoh-ee-deh wah ee-keh-mah-sehn.) (*You must not swim.*)

レスリングをしてはいけません。 **Resuringu o shite wa ikemasen.** (reh-soo-reen-goo oh shee-teh wah ee-keh-mah-sehn.) (*You must not wrestle.*)

Talkin' the Talk



Yoshiko works for a small company in Tokyo. The cherry trees have just started to bloom, and Yoshiko asks the president of the company to hold a flower-viewing party at a local park for all company employees. (Track 32)

Yoshiko: **Shachō, sakura ga sakimashita yo.**
 shah-chohhh, sah-koo-rah gah sah-kee-mah-shee-tah yoh.
 President, the cherry trees have started to bloom.

President: **Ā, sō.**
 ahh, sohh.
 Really?

Yoshiko: **Minna de Ueno Kōen de hanami o shimasen ka.**
 meen-nah deh oo-eh-noh kohh-ehn deh han-nah-mee
 oh shee-mah-sehn kah.
 Why don't we go flower viewing with everyone at Ueno Park?

President: **Ii desu ne. Shimashō!**
 eee deh-soo neh. shee-mah-shohhh!
 That's great. Let's do that!

Yoshiko: **Jā, kyō wa shigoto o 3-ji ni owatte mo ii desu ka.**
 jahh, kyohhh wah shee-goh-toh oh sahn-jee nee oh-waht-teh moh eee deh-soo kah.
 Then is it okay to be dismissed from work at 3 p.m. today?

President: **Anō . . .**
 ah-nohh . . .
 Well . . .

Words to Know

sakura	sah-koo-rah	cherry (tree)
saku	sah-koo	to bloom
minna de	meen-nah-deh	with everyone, together
hanami	hah-nah-mee	flower viewing
shigoto	shee-goh-toh	work
owaru	oh-wah-roo	to finish

Living the Sporting Life

Do you like to participate in or sit back and watch **supōtsu** (soo-pohh-tsoo) (*sports*)? **Yakyū** (yah-kyooo) (*baseball*) and **sakkā** (sahk-kahh) (*soccer*) are the most popular sports in Japan. But Japanese also enjoy the following sports:

- ✓ バレーボール **barēbōru** (bah-rehh-bohh-roo) (*volleyball*)
- ✓ バスケットボール **basukettobōru** (bah-soo-keht-toh-bohh-roo) (*basketball*)
- ✓ フットボール **futtabōru** (foot-toh-bohh-roo) (*football*)
- ✓ ゴルフ **gorufu** (goh-roo-foo) (*golf*)
- ✓ 空手 **karate** (kah-rah-teh) (*karate*)



Stop and smell the flowers

Japanese celebrate the arrival of spring by having **hanami** (hah-nah-mee), an informal party under the cherry trees when the trees are in bloom. They spread out blankets, eat, play music, sing, dance, and get drunk. Parks with cherry trees become very crowded in the

spring, and groups compete for places to party. As in the Japanese proverb **hana yori dango** (hah-nah yoh-ree dahng-go) (*dumpplings rather than flowers*), many people enjoy eating and drinking more than appreciating the beautiful flowers above their heads!

- ✓ 剣道 **kendō** (kehn-dohh) (*kendo, swordsmanship*)
- ✓ 弓道 **kyūdō** (kyooo-dohh) (*archery*)
- ✓ サーフィン **sāfin** (sahh-feen) (*surfing*)
- ✓ スケート **sukēto** (soo-keh-h-toh) (*skating*)
- ✓ スキー **sukī** (soo-keee) (*skiing*)
- ✓ 体操 **taisō** (tah-ee-sohh) (*gymnastics*)
- ✓ テニス **tenisu** (teh-nee-soo) (*tennis*)



Sumō (soo-mohh) (*sumo wrestling*) is the national sport in Japan. The object of **sumō** is to push your opponent out of a ring or to force any part of his body, other than the soles of his feet, to touch the ground. Successful **sumō** wrestlers in the top division usually weigh around 325 pounds. And believe it or not, many strong **sumō** wrestlers are from outside Japan!

Even if you don't play sports, you can still enjoy watching them as a spectator. In that case, you should know how to conjugate the **ru**-verb **miru** (mee-roo) (*to watch*):

<i>Japanese Script</i>	<i>Rōmaji</i>	<i>Pronunciation</i>
見る	miru	mee-roo
見ない	minai	mee-nah-ee
見（ます）	mi(masu)	mee(-mah-soo)
見て	mite	mee-teh

Using Your Artistic Talent

Don't be afraid of expressing your feelings and ideas artistically. Use your creativity. Which of the following art forms interests you?

- ✓ 油絵 **aburae** (ah-boo-rah-eh) (*oil painting*)
- ✓ 彫刻 **chōkoku** (chohh-koh-koo) (*sculpting/engraving*)
- ✓ 生け花 **ikebana** (ee-keh-bah-nah) (*flower arranging*)
- ✓ キルティング **kiruttingu** (kee-roo-teen-goo) (*quilting*)
- ✓ クラフト **kurafuto** (koo-rah-foo-toh) (*crafting*)
- ✓ 折り紙 **origami** (oh-ree-gah-mee) (*origami*)
- ✓ 茶道 **sadō or chadō** (sah-dohh or chah-dohh) (*tea ceremony*)
- ✓ 書道 **shodō** (shoh-dohh) (*calligraphy*)
- ✓ 水彩画 **suisaiga** (soo-ee-sah-ee-gah) (*watercolor painting*)

- ✓ 墨絵 **sumie** (soo-mee-eh) (*ink painting*)
- ✓ 陶芸 **tōgei** (tohh-geh) (*pottery*)

Making Music with Instruments

Many Japanese kids take piano and violin lessons because their moms want them to. But when they become teenagers, they play the electric guitar in rock bands. Do you play any of these musical instruments?

- ✓ バイオリン **baiorin** (bah-ee-oh-reen) (*violin*)
- ✓ チェロ **chero** (cheh-roh) (*cello*)
- ✓ ドラム **doramu** (doh-rah-moo) (*drums*)
- ✓ エレキギター **erekigitā** (eh-reh-kee gee-tahh) (*electric guitar*)
- ✓ フルート **furūto** (foo-rooo-toh) (*flute*)
- ✓ ギター **gitā** (gee-tahh) (*guitar*)
- ✓ ピアノ **piano** (pee-ah-noh) (*piano*)
- ✓ サクソフォン **sakusofon** (sah-koo-soh-fohn) (*saxophone*)
- ✓ トランペット **toranpetto** (toh-rahn-peht-toh) (*trumpet*)

If you've seen old Japanese films or visited a traditional Japanese town, you've probably heard one of these Japanese musical instruments:

- ✓ 琴 **koto** (koh-toh) (*long Japanese zither with 13 strings*)
- ✓ 尺八 **shakuhachi** (shah-koo-hah-chee) (*Japanese end-blown flute*)
- ✓ 三味線 **shamisen** (shah-mee-sehn) (*three-stringed Japanese banjo*)
- ✓ 太鼓 **taiko** (tah-ee-koh) (*Japanese drums*)
- ✓ 横笛 **yokobue** (yoh-koh-boo-eh) (*Japanese transverse flute*)



Telling someone you play a specific instrument in Japanese isn't as simple as it is in English. Different types of musical instruments use different verbs to mean *to play*. For wind instruments, you use the verb **fuku** (foo-koo). So to say *I play the flute*, you'd say **furūto o fuku** (foo-rooo-toh oh foo-koo). For a stringed instrument or a keyboard, you use the verb **hiku** (hee-koo). So to say *I play the piano and the violin*, you'd say **piano o hiku** (pee-ah-noh oh hee-koo) and **baiorin o hiku** (bah-ee-oh-reen oh hee-koo), respectively. For drums, use the verb **tataku** (tah-tah-koo).



If you aren't sure or don't remember which verb to use for a musical instrument, you can use the verb **suru** (soo-roo). It's not perfect, but others will understand what you mean.



Did your mother make you practice violin or piano when you were younger, like many Japanese moms do? If so, she probably commanded you to. Express a command or give an order by using a verb in its stem form plus **-nasai**. For example, the stem form of the verb **suru** is **shi** (shee). So **Shinasai!** (shee-nah-sah-ee!) means *Do it!* It's an order. Now you're the boss and can order your child to do the following:

- ✓ バイオリンを練習しなさい。 **Baiorin o renshū shinasaki!** (bah-ee-oh-reen oh rehn-shooo shee-nah-sah-ee!) (*Practice your violin!*)
- ✓ 勉強しなさい。 **Benkyō shinasaki!** (behn-kyohh shee-nah-sah-ee!) (*Study!*)
- ✓ 聞きなさい。 **Kikinasai.** (kee-kee-nah-sah-ee!) (*Listen!*)
- ✓ 掃除しなさい。 **Sōji o shinasaki!** (sohh-jee oh shee-nah-sah-ee!) (*Clean!*)

Just don't use such commands with your spouse if you want to stay happily married.

Talkin' the Talk



Midori is a high school student. She's watching TV in the living room, and her mother wants her to practice her violin. (Track 33)

- | | |
|---------|--|
| Mother: | Baiorin o renshū shinasaki.
bah-ee-oh-reen oh rehn-shooo shee-nah-sah-ee.
<i>Practice your violin.</i> |
| Midori: | Atode.
ah-toh-deh.
<i>Later.</i> |
| Mother: | Dame. Saki ni renshū shinasaki.
dah-meh. sah-kee nee rehn-shooo shee-nah-sah-ee.
<i>Not good. Practice first.</i> |
| Midori: | Dōshite.
dohh-shee-teh.
<i>Why?</i> |
| Mother: | Raishū wa risaitaru desu yo.
rah-ee-shooo wah ree-sah-ee-tah-roo deh-soo yoh.
<i>Your recital is next week.</i> |
| Midori: | Daijōbu.
dah-ee-johh-boo.
<i>I'll be all right.</i> |

Mother: **Daijōbu ja arimasen. Renshū shinasi!**
 dah-ee-johh-boo jah ah-ree-mah-sehn. rehn-shooo
 shee-nah-sah-ee!
You won't be all right. Practice!

Words to Know

renshū suru	rehn-shooo soo-roo	to practice
ato de	ah-toh-deh	later
dame	dah-meh	not good
daijōbu (na)	dah-ee-johh-boo (nah)	okay; fine
saki ni	sah-kee nee	first
raishū	rah-ee-shooo	next week
risaitaru	ree-sah-ee-tah-roo	recital

Playing Games

You can always play a game when you have some free time. These games aren't artistic, academic, or athletic, but they can make you forget about the real world for a while:

- ✓ ボードゲーム **bōdo gēmu** (bohh-doh gehh-moo) (*board game*)
- ✓ チェス **chesu** (cheh-soo) (*chess*)
- ✓ 碁 **go** (goh) (*go [a kind of Japanese chess]*)
- ✓ マージャン **mājan** (mahh-jahn) (*mahjongg [a kind of Chinese chess]*)
- ✓ パチンコ **pachinko** (pah-cheen-koh) (*a Japanese pinball game*)
- ✓ トランプ **toranpu** (toh-rahn-poo) (*cards*)

When you want to say *to play a game*, use the verb **suru**, as in **chesu o suru** (cheh-soo oh soo-roo) (*to play chess*), and just conjugate **suru**. (I show you this conjugation earlier in the chapter.)



Fun & Games

The following images depict different sports. Write the letter of each sport next to the name. You can find the answers in Appendix D.

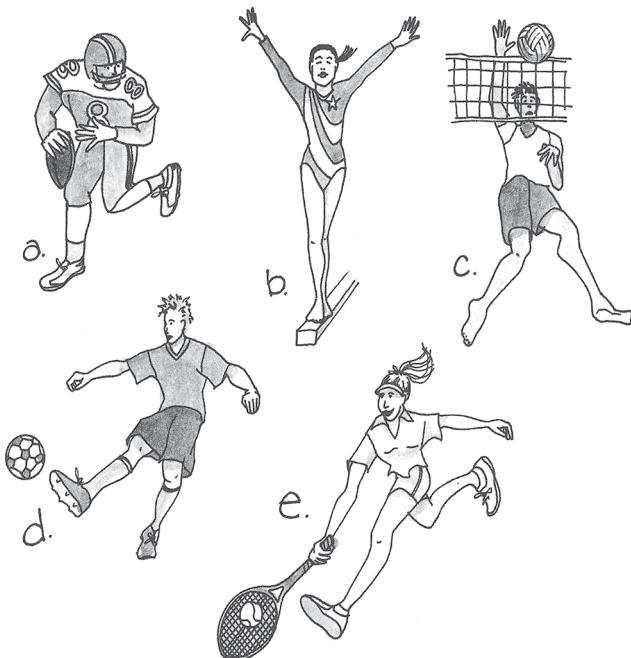


Illustration by Elizabeth Kurtzman

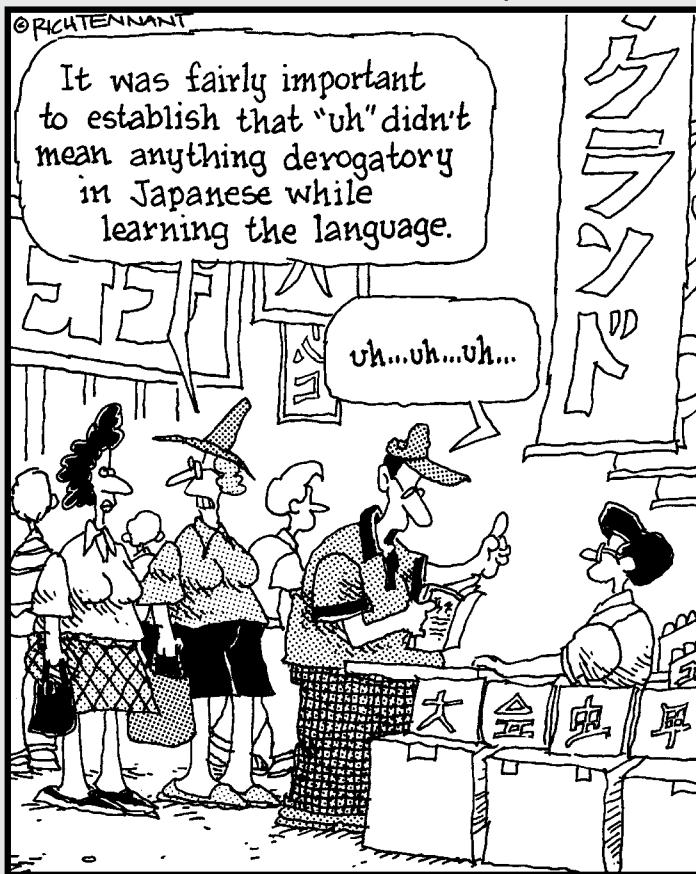
1. バレーボール *barēbōru*: _____
2. テニス *tenisu*: _____
3. サッカー *sakkā*: _____
4. フットボール *futtabōru*: _____
5. 体操 *taisō*: _____

Part III

Japanese on the Go

The 5th Wave

By Rich Tennant



In this part . . .

In Part III, you can escape your nine-to-five life or classroom doldrums and travel the globe. Are you ready to plan a trip, reserve a hotel, find transportation, go through customs, exchange currency, and handle emergencies? Are you ready to do it all in Japanese? With the information in this part, you will be. It has the key words and phrases you need to know to be ready for both the fun and the logistical aspects of travel. **Yoi tabi o!** (yoh-ee tah-bee oh!) (*Have a nice trip!*)

Chapter 14

Planning a Trip

In This Chapter

- ▶ Deciding on a destination
- ▶ Packing your bags
- ▶ Visiting a travel agent

Life is like a journey, but going on an actual trip once in a while to escape from the pressures of daily life is nice. After all, who doesn't need a little rest and relaxation? This chapter helps you plan where to go and what to bring, all in Japanese. It also explains how to deal with travel logistics (namely passports and visas) and travel agencies.

Picking the Place for Your Trip

After you secure the cash and the time for your **ryokō** (ryoh-kohh) (*trip*), pick the location. Do you want to visit a **gaikoku** (gah-ee-koh-koo) (*foreign country*)? How about one of the following **kuni** (koo-nee) (*countries*)?

- ✓ アイスランド **Aisurando** (ah-ee-soo-rahn-doh) (*Iceland*)
- ✓ 中国 **Chūgoku** (chooo-goh-koo) (*China*)
- ✓ フランス **Furansu** (foo-rahn-soo) (*France*)
- ✓ ギリシャ **Girisha** (gee-ree-shah) (*Greece*)
- ✓ イギリス **Igirisu** (ee-gee-ree-soo) (*England or Britain*)
- ✓ インド **Indo** (een-doh) (*India*)
- ✓ イタリア **Italia** (ee-tah-ree-ah) (*Italy*)
- ✓ カナダ **Kanada** (kah-nah-dah) (*Canada*)
- ✓ 韓国 **Kankoku** (kahn-koh-koo) (*South Korea*)
- ✓ オーストラリア **Ōsutoraria** (ohh-soo-toh-rah-ree-ah) (*Australia*)
- ✓ ロシア **Roshia** (roh-shee-ah) (*Russia*)
- ✓ タイ **Tai** (tah-ee) (*Thailand*)

Your ticket to ride: The Japan rail pass

Many tourists who come to Japan are shocked to find out the high cost of train tickets. A two-hour ride on the 新幹線 **Shinkansen** (sheen-kahn-sehn) (*Bullet Train*) can cost more than 100 dollars. To help foreign travelers in Japan, the Japan Railway Group has been offering ジャパンレールパス **japan rēru pasu** (jah-pahn rehh-roo pah-soo) (*the Japan rail pass*), which short-term visitors to Japan can use for a limited time for sightseeing purposes. All you need to do

is purchase a coupon through a travel agency before entering Japan. Then in Japan you exchange the coupon for the pass at a train station when you're ready to start using it. The pass is good for travel on all major forms of transportation provided by the Japan Railway Group, with a few exceptions. **Note:** The pass is mainly for non-Japanese passport holders, but some Japanese citizens who live overseas are also eligible; check the qualification criteria carefully.

Following are some of the interesting historical buildings you can find in many countries:

- ✓ 教会 **kyōkai** (kyohh-kah-ee) (*churches*)
- ✓ お城 **o-shiro** (oh-shee-roh) (*castles*)
- ✓ お寺 **o-tera** (oh-teh-rah) (*temples*)

You may notice that the sentence-ending particle **yo** (yoh) is used for emphasis in the following Talkin' the Talk dialogue. Depending on the intonation and the context, you may sound very pushy, very helpful, or very enthusiastic when you use **yo**. So you better not use **yo** when you talk to your teacher or boss until you understand exactly when and how to use it. Often, the feminine ending **wa** occurs right before the emphasis particle **yo**.



The dialogue also features the conjunction word **demo** (deh-moh) (*however*). Use conjunction words such as **demo** to clarify the nature of your statement in relation with the previous statement made by you or someone else. Note that even though **demo** is similar to the particle **ga** (gah), which is placed at the end of a clause (see Chapter 10), **demo** is actually a word, so you place it at the beginning of a sentence.

旅行をしたいです。でも、お金がありません。 **Ryokō o shitai desu.**
Demo, okane ga arimasen. (ryoh-kohh oh shee-tah-ee deh-soo. deh-moh, oh-kah-neh-gah ah-ree-mah-sehn.) (*I want to go on a trip. However, I have no money.*)

サンフランシスコは行きました。でも、ロサンゼルスは行きませんでした。
Sanfuranshisuko wa ikimashita. Demo, rosanzerusu wa ikimasen deshita. (sahn-foo-rahn-shee-soo-koh wah ee-kee-mah-shee-tah. deh-moh, roh-sahn-zeh-roo-soo wah ee-kee-mah-sehn deh-shee-tah.) (*I went to San Francisco. However, I didn't go to Los Angeles.*)

お金はありません。でも、よく旅行をします。 **O-kane wa arimasen. Demo, yoku ryokō o shimasu.** (oh-kah-neh wah ah-ree-mah-sehn. deh-moh, yoh-koo ryoh-kohh oh shee-mah-soo.) (*I don't have money, but I often travel.*)

Other conjunction words include **desukara** (deh-soo-kah-rah) (*therefore*), **sorekara** (soh-reh-kah-rah) (*and then*), **soreni** (soh-reh-neee) (*furthermore*), and **sōsuruto** (sohh-soo-roo-toh) (*then*). To see examples of **sorekara** and **sōsuruto** in action, turn to Chapter 8; for examples of **desukara** (*therefore*), check out the following sample sentences:

お金がありません。ですから、旅行ができません。 **O-kane ga arimasen. Desukara, ryokō ga dekimasan.** (oh-kah-neh gah ah-ree-mah-sehn. deh-soo-kah-rah, ryoh-kohh gah deh-kee-mah-sehn.) (*I don't have any money. Therefore, I can't travel.*)

日本に2週間います。ですから、ジャパンレールパスを買いました。
Nihon ni nishūkan imasu. Desukara, japan rēru pasu o kaimashita.
(nee-hohn nee nee-shoooo-kahn ee-mah-soo. deh-soo-kah-rah, jah-pahn rehh-roo-pah-soo oh kah-ee-mah-shee-tah.) (*I'll be in Japan for two weeks. So I bought a Japan rail pass.*)



Keep in mind that **aru** (ah-roo) (*to exist*) is slightly irregular — its negative form is **nai**. When you talk about whether you have or don't have something, say **aru** and **nai**, respectively. (For more information on using the verb **aru**, see Chapter 7.)

Talkin' the Talk



Junko and Hiroko are co-workers at a company that is going to be closed for one week at the end of the year. They've decided to go on a trip together, and they're debating where to go. (Track 34)

Junko: **Yōroppa wa.**
yohh-rohp-pah wah.
How about Europe?

Hiroko: **Amerika ga ii yo.**
ah-meh-ree-kah gah eee yoh.
America is better.

Junko: **Demo, Amerika wa furui tatemono ga nai kara . . .**
deh-moh, ah-meh-ree-kah wah foo-roo-ee tah-teh-moh-noh gah nah-ee kah-rah . . .
But there are no old buildings in America, so . . .

Hiroko: **Demo, Amerika wa omoshiroi yo.**
deh-moh, ah-meh-ree-kah wah oh-moh-shee-roh-ee yoh.
But America is fun.

Japan: Running hot and cold

If you're planning a trip to Japan, you should know that although the country has four seasons (including a brief rainy season), the climate varies tremendously depending on where in the country you are. Why? Because Japan is a long, narrow country. Japan's north end is at the same latitude as Montreal, and its southern tip is at the same

latitude as the Florida Keys. So it snows heavily up north in Hokkaido, but it's quite hot farther south in Kyushu. Also, know that Japan uses the Celsius scale (°C) rather than the Fahrenheit scale (°F) for indicating temperature. So if you keep your air conditioning set at 77 degrees Fahrenheit, you'd set it at about 25 degrees Celsius.

Words to Know

<i>Yōroppa</i>	<i>yohh-rohp-pah</i>	<i>Europe</i>
<i>Amerika</i>	<i>ah-meh-ree-kah</i>	<i>America</i>
<i>demo</i>	<i>deh-moh</i>	<i>but</i>
<i>furui</i>	<i>foo-roo-ee</i>	<i>old</i>
<i>kara</i>	<i>kah-rah</i>	<i>because</i>
<i>tatemono</i>	<i>tah-teh-moh-noh</i>	<i>buildings</i>
<i>omoshiroi</i>	<i>oh-moh-shee-roh-ee</i>	<i>fun</i>

Dealing with Passports and Visas

Because the U.S. and Japanese governments have a mutual agreement, American citizens and Japanese citizens can visit each other's countries without a visa for a short sightseeing visit. However, you'll definitely need a passport. My advice? Don't wait until the last minute to obtain a passport or renew one. Following are some vocabulary words and phrases that are bound to come in handy when dealing with passports and visas:

- ✓ ビザ or 査証 **biza** or **sashō** (bee-zah or sah-shohh) (*visa*)
- ✓ 長期滞在 **chōki taizai** (chohh-kee tah-ee-zah-ee) (*long-term visit*)
- ✓ 入国目的 **nyūkoku mokuteki** (nyooo-koh-koo moh-koo-tah-kee) (*purpose of visit*)
- ✓ 入国審査 **nyūkoku shinsa** (nyooo-koh-koo sheehn-sah) (*immigration*)

- ✓ パスポート or 旅券 **pasupōto** or **ryoken** (pah-soo-pohh-toh or ryoh-kehn) (*passport*)
- ✓ 写真 **shashin** (shah-sheen) (*photo*)
- ✓ 申請書 **shinseisho** (sheen-sehh-shoh) (*application form*)
- ✓ 総領事館 **sōryōjikan** (sohh-rhohh-jee-kahn) (*consulate general*)
- ✓ 大使館 **taishikan** (tah-ee-shee-kahn) (*embassy*)
- ✓ 滞在期間 **taizai kikan** (tah-ee-zah-ee kee-kahn) (*duration of stay*)
- ✓ 短期滞在 **tanki taizai** (tahn-kee tah-ee-zah-ee) (*short-term visit*)
- ✓ 税関 **zeikan** (zeh-ee-kahn) (*customs*)

Getting Help from a Travel Agency

If arranging the transportation and accommodations for your trip is too much for you, get help from a **ryokō gaisha** (ryoh-kohh gah-ee-shah) (*travel agency*) and choose the plan that satisfies your needs. To explore the agency's tours and packages, you'll need these words and phrases:

- ✓ ホテル **hoteru** (hoh-teh-roo) (*hotel*)
- ✓ 観光 **kankō** (kahn-kohh) (*sightseeing*)
- ✓ キャンセル **kyanseru** (kyahn-seh-roo) (*cancel*)
- ✓ キャンセル料 **kyanseruryō** (kyahn-seh-roo-ryohh) (*cancellation fee*)
- ✓ 申込書 **mōshikomisho** (mohh-shee-koh-mee-shoh) (*application form*)
- ✓ パッケージ **pakkēji** (pahk-kehh-jee) (*package*)
- ✓ 添乗員 **tenjōin** (tehn-johh-een) (*tour conductor*)
- ✓ ツアー **tsuā** (tsoo-ahh) (*tour*)
- ✓ 予約 **yoyaku** (yoh-yah-koo) (*reservation*)

Tell the agency where you want to go and how many days and nights you want to spend there. In Japanese, say the number of nights first, and then say the number of days. To specify the number of nights, use the counter **-haku**. Depending on the preceding number, **-haku** alternates with **-paku**. Here's the general pattern (for more help specifying the number of days, flip to Chapter 5).

- ✓ 一泊二日 **ip-paku futsuka** (eep-pah-koo foo-tsoo-kah) (*one night, two days*)
- ✓ 二泊三日 **ni-haku mikka** (nee-hah-koo meek-kah) (*two nights, three days*)
- ✓ 七泊八日 **nana-haku yōka** (nah-nah-hah-koo yohh-kah) (*seven nights, eight days*)

Also, check what the travel agency's packages include. **Tsukimasu** (tsoo-kee-mah-soo) means *to be included*. Its dictionary form is **tsuku** (tsoo-koo). Here's how to conjugate this **u**-verb:

<i>Japanese Script</i>	<i>Rōmaji</i>	<i>Pronunciation</i>
付く	tsuku	tsoo-koo
付かない	tsukanai	tsoo-kah-nah-ee
付き（ます）	tsuki(masu)	tsoo-kee(-mah-soo)
付いて	tsuite	tsoo-ee-teh

You may hear phrases like these after inquiring about what's included in a particular travel package:

- ✓ 朝食と夕食が付きます。 **Chōshoku to yūshoku ga tsukimasu.** (chohh-shoh-koo toh yooo-shoh-koo gah tsoo-kee-mah-soo.) (*Breakfast and dinner are included.*)
- ✓ ホテル付きで3万円です。 **Hoteru tsuki de 3-man-en desu.** (hoh-teh-roo tsoo-kee deh sahn-mahn-ehn deh-soo.) (*It costs 30,000 yen with the hotel fee.*)
- ✓ 添乗員が同行します。 **Tenjōin ga dōkō shimasu.** (tehn-johh-een gah dohh-kohh shee-mah-soo.) (*A tour guide will accompany you.*)
- ✓ 東京ディズニーランド一日観光です。 **Tōkyō dizunirando ichi-nichi kankō desu.** (tohh-kyohh dee-zoo-neeee-rahn-doh ee-chee-nee-chee kahn-kohh deh-soo.) (*It's a one-day sightseeing trip to Tokyo Disneyland.*)

Stating Your Opinions

If you're planning your trip with others, you may need to make a case for a certain hotel you want to stay at or sight you want to see. To state what you think, use the **u**-verb **omou** (oh-moh-oo) (*to think*). Practice conjugating the verb **omou**. Don't forget the **w** sound in the negative form.

<i>Japanese Script</i>	<i>Rōmaji</i>	<i>Pronunciation</i>
思う	omou	oh-moh-oo
思わない	omowanai	oh-moh-wah-nah-ee
思い（ます）	omoi(masu)	oh-moh-ee(-mah-soo)
思って	omotte	oh-moht-teh

As I explain in Chapter 12, you use the quotation particle **to** (toh) to mark a sentence that expresses what you think. Just make sure the sentence before the particle **to** ends in a verb or adjective in the plain/informal form.

田中さんも行くと思います。 **Tanaka-san mo iku to omoimasu.** (tah-nah-kah-sahn moh ee-koo toh oh-moh-ee-mah-soo.) (*I think Mr. Tanaka will also go there.*)

あの人は添乗員だと思います。 **Ano hito wa tenjōin da to omoimasu.** (ah-noh hee-toh wah tehn-johh-een dah toh oh-moh-ee-mah-soo.) (*I think that person is a tour conductor.*)

あのホテルはよくないと思います。 **Ano hoteru wa yokunai to omoimasu.** (ah-noh hoh-teh-roo wah yoh-koo-nah-ee toh oh-moh-ee-mah-soo.) (*I think that hotel isn't good.*)

そう思います。 **Sō omoimasu.** (sohh oh-moh-ee-mah-soo.) (*I think so.*)



Both **omou** and **kangaeru** (kahn-gah-eh-roo) mean *to think*, but they're not interchangeable. **Omou** is *to think* in the sense of having an opinion, and **kangaeru** expresses more of a sense of pondering.

これはいいと思います。 **Kore wa ii to omoimasu.** (koh-reh wah eee toh oh-moh-ee-mah-soo.) (*I think this is good.*)

それをよく考えてください。 **Sore o yoku kangaete kudasai.** (soh-reh oh yoh-koo kahn-gah-eh-teh koo-dah-sah-ee.) (*Please think carefully about that.*)



To indicate that what you think is just a guess, use **deshō** (deh-shohh) at the end of the sentence. The sentence before **deshō** is in the plain/informal style, but just remember to drop the **da** (dah) that appears in the plain present affirmative form of **desu** or a **na**-type adjective. Here are some examples:

あのホテルは高いでしょう。 **Ano hoteru wa takai deshō.** (ah-noh hoh-tah-roo wah tah-kah-ee deh-shohh.) (*That hotel is probably expensive.*)

あの人は添乗員でしょう。 **Ano hito wa tenjōin deshō.** (ah-noh hee-toh wah tehn-johh-een deh-shohh.) (*I guess that person is a tour conductor.*)

You can use **kamoshiremasen** (kah-moh-shee-reh-mah-sehn) to say *It's possible that . . .* (see Chapter 6 for info on how to use **kamoshiremasen**).



Eating a box lunch from the train station

駅弁 **Ekiben** (eh-kee-behn) is a box lunch sold at 駅 **eki** (eh-kee) (*train stations*) or on trains. Different **eki** sell different **ekiben** with unique names. The name of my favorite **ekiben** is 峠の釜飯 **Tōge no kamameshi** (tohh-geh noh kah-mah-meh-shee) (*Mountain Pass Chicken-Vegetable Rice in a Pot*) from Nagano.

Some **ekiben** are famous, and people visit the **eki** or get on the train just to buy one of these lunches. If you travel by train in Japan, buy an **ekiben** and a bottle of hot green tea at the platform. What a fun experience!

Packing for Your Trip

The first step for packing for your trip is to decide on the luggage. Are you going to take a big **sūtsukēsu** (sooo-tsoo-kehh-soo) (*suitcase*) or a smaller **ryokō kaban** (ryoh-kohh kah-bahn) (*travel bag*)?

Whatever bag you choose, be sure to pack clothing staples such as a **sētā** (sehh-tahh) (*sweater*), **puruōbā** (poo-roo-ohh-bahh) (*pullover*), **sunikā** (soo-neeee-kahh) (*sneakers*), and **jinzū** (jeeen-zoo) (*jeans*); see Chapter 10 for additional clothing vocabulary words. And if you’re traveling to a warm destination, don’t forget to pack some weather-appropriate gear, including the following:

- ✓ バイザー **baizā** (bah-ee-zahh) (*visor*)
- ✓ 帽子 **bōshi** (bohh-shee) (*hat/cap*)
- ✓ サンダル **sandaru** (sahn-dah-roo) (*sandals*)
- ✓ サングラス **sangurasu** (sahn-goo-rah-soo) (*sunglasses*)

What else do you need? First, conjugate the **u**-verb **iru** (ee-roo) (*to need*) — not to be confused with the verb **iru** (ee-roo) (*to exist*), which is a **ru**-verb.

<i>Japanese Script</i>	<i>Rōmaji</i>	<i>Pronunciation</i>
要る	iru	ee-roo
要らない	iranai	ee-rah-nah-ee
要り (ます)	iri(masu)	ee-ree(-mah-soo)
要って	itte	eet-teh

When you think about travel necessities, I sure hope toiletries come to mind. Here’s how to talk about some common toiletry items in Japanese:

- ✓ 歯ブラシ **haburashi** (hah-boo-rah-shee) (*toothbrush*)
- ✓ 歯磨き粉 **hamigakiko** (hah-mee-gah-kee-koh) (*toothpaste*)
- ✓ 剃刀 **kamisori** (kah-mee-soh-ree) (*razor*)
- ✓ 化粧品 **keshōhin** (keh-shohh-heen) (*cosmetics*)
- ✓ くし **kushi** (koo-shee) (*comb*)
- ✓ 石鹼 **sekken** (sehk-kehn) (*soap*)
- ✓ タオル **taoru** (tah-oh-roo) (*towel*)

Other items that may be useful to pack include

- ✓ 地図 **chizu** (chee-zoo) (*map*)
- ✓ 日焼け止め **hiyakedome** (hee-yah-keh-doh-meh) (*sunscreen*)
- ✓ 懐中電灯 **kaichūdentō** (kah-ee-choooo-dehn-tohh) (*flashlight*)
- ✓ カメラ **kamera** (kah-meh-rah) (*camera*)
- ✓ カーナビ **kānabi** (kahh-nah-bee) (*car navigation system*)
- ✓ 傘 **kasa** (kah-sah) (*umbrella*)
- ✓ 薬 **kusuri** (koo-soo-ree) (*medicine*)



Fun & Games

Name the marked items in Japanese. The answers are in Appendix D.

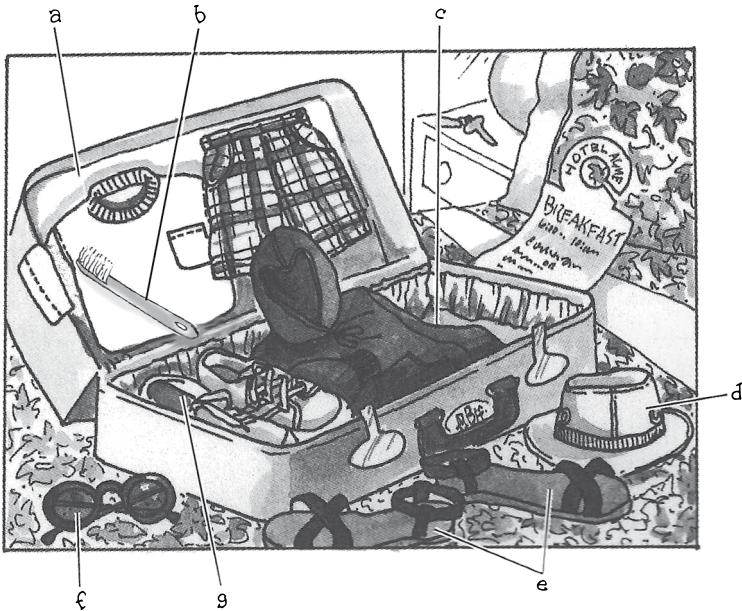


Illustration by Elizabeth Kurtzman

- a. _____
- b. _____
- c. _____
- d. _____
- e. _____
- f. _____
- g. _____



Chapter 15

Dealing with Money in a Foreign Land

In This Chapter

- ▶ Obtaining Japanese yen
- ▶ Visiting the bank
- ▶ Withdrawing money from the ATM
- ▶ Paying with cold, hard cash
- ▶ Burning up the plastic

K

ane wa tenka no mawari mono. (kah-neh wah tehn-kah noh mah-wah-ree-moh-noh.) (*Money goes around the world.*). This Japanese proverb means that the **o-kane** (oh-kah-neh) (*money*) you spend today will come back to you in the future. You buy other people's products, but they also buy yours. Use your money to make yourself, your family, and your friends happy.

In this chapter, I give you important words and phrases for handling money. I also explain how to talk about acquiring and spending money in Japanese.

Getting Money

You have to work if you want to make money, unless your parents or grandparents are extremely rich. But I'm not concerned about where your income comes from; in this section, I'm just interested in how you access it. You can get your money from an ATM, a foreign-currency exchange counter, or a bank. I know you have some under your mattress too. Oh, it's not under your mattress? Then where is it? Can you tell me in Japanese?

Exchanging money

If you're in Japan, the **en** (ehn) (*yen*) is the only acceptable currency. Don't say *yen*; say **en**. Drop that *y* sound. As you can see, the yen sign, ¥, looks like an upper case *Y* with two horizontal lines. (Note that ¥ is the currency sign, not a **kanji**. The **kanji** for *yen* is 円, which is read as **en** [ehn].) You can exchange your money for **en** at the airport or at major banks. Check out Table 15-1 and find the foreign currency that you have in your pocket.

Table 15-1

Currencies

<i>Currency</i>	<i>Pronunciation</i>	<i>English</i>
アメリカドル <i>Amerika doru</i>	ah-meh-ree-kah doh-roo	<i>U.S. dollar</i>
中国元 <i>Chūgoku gen</i>	chooo-goh-koo gehn	<i>Chinese yuan</i>
イギリスピンド <i>Igirisu pondo</i>	ee-gee-ree-soo pohn-doh	<i>British pound</i>
カナダドル <i>Kanada doru</i>	kah-nah-dah doh-roo	<i>Canadian dollar</i>
メキシコペソ <i>Mekishiko peso</i>	meh-kee-shee-koh peh-soh	<i>Mexican peso</i>
オーストラリアドル <i>Ōsutoraria doru</i>	ohh-soo-toh-rah-ree-ah doh-roo	<i>Australian dollar</i>
ユーロ <i>Yūro</i>	yooo-roh	<i>European Union euro</i>

The following words are essential for exchanging currency:

- ✓ 円 **en** (ehn) (*yen*)
- ✓ 外貨 **gaika** (gah-ee-kah) (*foreign currency*)
- ✓ 銀行 **ginkō** (geen-kohh) (*bank*)
- ✓ 為替レート **kawase rēto** (kah-wah-seh rehh-toh) (*exchange rate*)
- ✓ 両替 **ryōgae** (ryohhh-gah-eh) (*exchange*)

Ask for the current exchange rate and exchange your currency for yen. The following phrases may be helpful:

- ✓ 外貨の両替はできますか。 **Gaika no ryōgae wa dekimasu ka.** (gah-ee-kah noh ryohhh-gah-eh wah deh-kee-mah-soo kah.) (*Can you exchange foreign currency?*)

- ✓ 今1ドル何円ですか。 **Ima ichi-doru nan-en desu ka.** (ee-mah ee-chee-doh-roo nah-nahn-deh-soo kah.) (*How many yen for a dollar now?*)
- ✓ 今日の為替レートを教えてください。 **Kyō no kawase rēto o oshiete kudasai.** (kyohh noh kah-wah-seh rehh-toh oh oh-shee-eh-teh koo-dah-sah-ee.) (*Please let me know today's exchange rate.*)
- ✓ アメリカドルを円に両替したいんですが。 **Amerika doru o en ni ryōgae shi-tai-n-desu ga.** (ah-meh-ree-kah doh-roo oh ehn nee ryohh-gah-eh shee-tah-een-deh-soo gah.) (*I'd like to exchange some U.S. dollars for yen [but could you help me?].*)
- ✓ 500ドルを円に両替してください。 **500-doru o en ni ryōgae shite kudasai.** (goh-hyah-koo-doh-roo oh ehn nee ryohh-gah-eh shee-teh koo-dah-sah-ee.) (*Please exchange \$500 for yen.*)

Some of the responses you may get when you exchange currency are as follows:

- ✓ 買いは1ドル80円、売りは1ドル81円です。 **Kai wa ichi-doru 80-en, uri wa ichi-doru 81-en desu.** (kah-ee wa ee-chee-doh-roo hah-chee-jooo-ehn, oo-ree wah ee-chee-doh-roo hah-chee-jooo-ee-chee-ehn deh-soo.) (*The rate for exchanging dollars for yen is 80 yen to the dollar; the rate for exchanging yen for dollars is 81 yen to the dollar.*)
- ✓ 手数料は含まれています。 **Tesūryō wa fukumarete imasu.** (teh-sooo-ryohh wah foo-koo-mah-reh-teh ee-mah-soo.) (*The fee is already included.*)
- ✓ 今日の為替レートは昨日と同じです。 **Kyō no kawase rēto wa kinō to onaji desu.** (kyohh noh kah-wah-seh rehh-toh wah kee-nohh toh oh-nah-jee deh-soo.) (*Today's exchange rate is the same as yesterday's.*)

Talkin' the Talk



Natalie has just arrived at Narita Airport in Tokyo, and she's about to exchange her U.S. dollars for Japanese yen at the exchange counter. (Track 35)

Natalie: **Sumimasen. Amerika doru kara en no ryōgae wa dekimasu ka.**
 soo-mee-mah-sehn. ah-meh-ree-kah doh-roo kah-rah
 ehn noh ryohh-gah-eh wah deh-kee-mah-soo kah.
 Excuse me. Can I change U.S. dollars for yen?

Clerk: **Hai.**
 hah-ee.
 Sure.

Natalie: **Kyō no kawase rēto wa ikura desu ka.**
kyohh noh kah-wah-seh rehh-toh wah ee-koo-rah
deh-soo kah.
What is today's exchange rate?

Clerk: **Ichi-doru 81-en desu.**
ee-chee-doh-roo hah-chee-jooo-ee-chee-ehn deh-soo.
81 yen for \$1.

Natalie: **Jā, 200-doru onegaishimasu.**
jahh, nee-hyah-koo-doh-roo
oh-neh-gah-ee-shee-mah-soo.
Then I'd like to exchange \$200, please.

Clerk: **Pasupōto wa gozaimasu ka.**
pah-soo-pohh-toh wah goh-zah-ee-mah-soo kah.
Do you have your passport?

Natalie: **Hai. Dōzo.**
hah-ee. dohh-zoh.
Yes. Here you are.

Words to Know

ryōgae suru	ryohh-gah-eh soo-roo	to exchange
wa dekimasu ka	wah deh-kee-mah- soo kah	Can you do . . . ?
amerika doru	ah-meh-ree-kah doh-roo	U.S. dollar
kawase rēto	kah-wah-seh rehh-toh	exchange rate
pasupōto	pah-soo-pohh-toh	passport

Opening a bank account

Bank is **ginkō** (geen-kohh) in Japanese. It sounds like the popular dietary supplement *ginko biloba*, which is supposed to increase your brainpower, but it has nothing to do with that. I know a lot of people who don't use their brains at all when they withdraw money from the **ginkō**.



When you enter a bank in Japan, you'll hear this right away: **Irasshaimase.** (ee-rahs-shah-ee-mah-sehh.) (*Welcome.*). The bank tellers dress in uniforms, and they treat you almost like a god. After you enter the bank, pick up a ticket and wait until your number is called. Most Japanese banks have comfy couches, current magazines, and TVs that make your wait almost enjoyable. When your number is called, go to the designated **madoguchi** (mah-doh-goo-chee) (*window*). Japanese banks have low windows so that customers can sit down while they perform their transactions.



When you open a Japanese bank account, the bank clerk asks you to fill out a form and present your identification. When opening a bank account, bring your **inkan** (een-kahn) (*seal*) along with your identification. **Inkan** is a seal stamp of your name; it's used in lieu of signatures in Japan. You can get a custom-made **inkan** pretty cheaply, although some **inkan** can be very expensive depending on the material that they use. Some banks let foreigners open an account with their signatures without requiring an **inkan**, but be sure to confirm your bank's policy before you go in to open an account.

To open a bank account, you need your identification as well as some money for your initial **yokin** (yoh-keen) (*deposit*). You also need the **u-verb hiraku** (hee-rah-koo) (*to open*). Check out its conjugated forms, and notice the **k** in all the forms except the **te-form**.

Japanese Script	Rōmaji	Pronunciation
開く	hiraku	hee-rah-koo
開かない	hirakanai	hee-rah-kah-nah-ee
開き (ます)	hiraki(masu)	hee-rah-kee(mah-soo)
開いて	hiraite	hee-rah-ee-teh

Here're some terms you need for banking in Japan:

- ✓ 電信送金する **denshin sōkin suru** (dehn-sheen sohh-keen soo-roo) (*to wire money*)
- ✓ 普通預金口座 **futsū yokin kōza** (foo-tsoo yoh-keen kohh-zah) (*savings account*)

- ✓ 現金 **genkin** (gehn-keen) (*cash*)
- ✓ 口座 **kōza** (kohh-za) (*account*)
- ✓ 身分証明書 **mibun shōmeisho** (mee-boon shohh-mehh-shoh) (*identification*)
- ✓ 利息 **risoku** (ree-soh-koo) (*interest*)
- ✓ 定期預金口座 **teiki yokin kōza** (tehh-kee yoh-keen kohh-zah) (*fixed-term deposit account/CD*)
- ✓ 預金する **yokin suru** (yoh-keen soo-roo) (*to make a deposit*)
- ✓ 用紙 **yōshi** (yohh-shee) (*form*)



Personal checks are unheard of in Japan. Most companies and institutions have **tōza yokin kōza** (tohh-zah yoh-keen kohh-zah) (*checking accounts*), but individuals usually don't. People often pay bills online, through a special postal service, or at a convenience store.



Bank clerks speak to customers by using super-polite words and phrases. To make their requests very polite, bank clerks may use a verb in the stem form and place it between **o** (oh) and **kudasai** (koo-dah-sah-ee), as in **O-kaki kudasai**. (oh-kah-kee koo-dah-sah-ee.) (*Please write it.*) and **O-mise kudasai**. (oh-mee-seh koo-dah-sah-ee.) (*Please show it to me.*) In addition, many words that bank tellers use start with the polite prefix **go** or **o**. **Go** should be used for words from Chinese and **o** for native Japanese words, but this guideline has so many exceptions that you really have to just consider each word one by one. (See Chapters 4 and 12 for more information about these polite prefixes.) Be ready for the following super-polite requests from people at the bank:

- ✓ ご住所とお電話番号をお願いします。 **Go-jūsho to o-denwa-bangō o onegaishimasu.** (goh-jooo-shoh toh oh-dehn-wah-bahn-gohh oh oh-neh-gah-ee-shee-mah-soo.) (*Your address and your telephone number, please.*)
- ✓ 身分証明書をお見せください。 **Mibun shōmeisho o o-mise kudasai.** (mee-boon shohh-mehh-shoh oh oh-mee-seh koo-dah-sah-ee.) (*Please show me your identification.*)
- ✓ お名前をお書きください。 **O-namae o o-kaki kudasai.** (oh-nah-mah-eh oh oh-kah-kee koo-dah-sah-ee.) (*Please write your name.*)
- ✓ こちらにご捺印をお願いいたします。 **Kochira ni go-natsuin o onegai itashimasu.** (koh-chee-rah nee goh-nah-tsoo-een oh oh-neh-gah-ee ee-tah-shee-mah-soo.) (*Please stamp your name seal here.*)

Making withdrawals from your account

The most convenient way of withdrawing money from your bank is to find a nearby ATM. If you use the machine at your own bank, you can insert your passbook in addition to your card, so the transaction details can be printed

on your passbook on the spot (meaning no need to keep the slip). If you want to withdraw your money at the window, you'll have to bring your passbook and your **inkan** and fill out a withdrawal slip. (I tell you all about **inkan** in the preceding section.) Actually, bring your identification along as well when you withdraw your money manually.

Regardless of how you choose to withdraw your money, here are the words you need:

- ✓ 引き出す **hikidasu** (hee-kee-dah-soo) (*to withdraw*)
- ✓ 自動引き落とし **jidō hikiotoshi** (jee-dohh hee-kee-oh-toh-shee) (*automatic payment*)
- ✓ 口座番号 **kōza bangō** (kohh-zah bahn-gohh) (*account number*)

Note that if you withdraw your money at the window, you'll need to state your request along these lines:

- ✓ 10万円引き出したいんですが。 **Jū-man-en hikidashi-tai-n-desu ga.** (jooo-mahn-ehn hee-kee-dah-shee-tah-een-deh-soo gah.) (*I'd like to withdraw 100,000 yen [but is it possible?].*)
- ✓ 残高を調べてくださいませんか。 **Zandaka o shirabete kudasai masen ka.** (zahn-dah-kah oh shee-rah-beh-teh koo-dah-sah-ee mah-sehn kah.) (*Could you please check the balance?*)

Using an ATM

An ATM (ehh-tee-eh-moo) (*ATM*) makes getting cash easy: All you need is your **kyasshu kādo** (kyahs-shoo kahh-doh) (*ATM card*). You can select from the following functions displayed on the ATM:

- ✓ お預け入れ **o-azukeire** (oh-ah-zoo-keh-ee-reh) (*deposit*)
- ✓ お振込み **o-furikomi** (oh-foo-ree-koh-mee) (*transfer*)
- ✓ お引き出し **o-hikidashi** (oh-hee-kee-dah-shee) (*withdrawal*)
- ✓ 残高照会 **zandaka shōkai** (zahn-dah-kah shohh-kah-ee) (*balance inquiry*)

ATMs in Japan often give you instruction verbally, but some only show the instructions in Japanese script on their screens. Pay attention to the **kana** and **rōmaji** in the following list of common ATM instructions, and you'll be good to go either way:

- ✓ カードをお入れください。 **Kādo o o-ire kudasai.** (kahh-doh oh oh-ee-reh koo-dah-sah-ee.) (*Insert your card, please.*)
- ✓ 暗証番号をどうぞ。 **Anshō bangō o dōzo.** (ahn-shohh bahn-gohh oh dohh-zoh.) (*Enter your PIN.*)

- ✓ しばらくお待ちください。 **Shibaraku o-machi kudasai.** (shee-bah-rah-koo oh-mah-chee koo-dah-sah-ee.) (*Please wait.*)
- ✓ 金額をどうぞ。 **Kingaku o dōzo.** (keen-gah-koo oh dohh-zoh.) (*Enter the amount please.*)
- ✓ 確認してください。 **Kakunin shite kudasai.** (kah-koo-neen shee-teh koo-dah-sah-ee.) (*Confirm the amount.*)
- ✓ 現金をお受け取りください。 **Genkin o o-uketori kudasai.** (gehn-keen oh oh-oo-keh-toh-ree koo-dah-sah-ee.) (*Take the cash.*)
- ✓ カードをお取りください。 **Kādo o o-tori kudasai.** (kahh-doh oh oh-toh-ree koo-dah-sah-ee.) (*Remove your card.*)
- ✓ ありがとうございました。 **Arigatō gozaimashita.** (ah-ree-gah-tohh goh-zah-ee-mah-shee-tah.) (*Thank you very much.*)

Conjugate the important **u**-verb **toru** (toh-roo) (*to take*). Notice that the **r** appears in all the forms except the **te**-form. Just swallow the **r** in the **te**-form. How did it taste? Not bad, right?

<i>Japanese Script</i>	<i>Rōmaji</i>	<i>Pronunciation</i>
取る	toru	toh-roo
取らない	toranai	toh-rah-nah-ee
取り (ます)	tori(masu)	toh-ree(-mah-soo)
取って	totte	toht-teh

Spending Money

Spending money shouldn't always be a pain; it should be a rewarding experience as well. What's the point in saving all your cash until you can no longer use it? As the saying goes, "You can't take it with you." Whether you believe in spending only cash or you're a **kurejitto kādo** (koo-reh-jeet-toh kahh-doh) (*credit card*) worshipper, the next sections have the information you need to get that money spent.

Ka-ching! Shelling out cash

Cash is convenient for buying little things like a cup of coffee, a magazine, or a snack from the vending machine. Most countries' currencies include both **shihei** (shee-hehh) (*bills*) and **kōka** (kohhh-kah) (*coins*).



Satsu (sah-tsoo) is also used instead of **shihei** when following an amount, as in **sen-en satsu** (sehn-ehn sah-tsoo) (¥1,000 bill). Similarly, **dama** (dah-mah) is also used instead of **kōka** when following an amount, as in **jū-en dama** (jooo-ehn dah-mah) (¥10 coin).

Following are all the bills and coins used in Japan:

- ✓ 一万円紙幣 **ichi-man-en shihei** (ee-chee-mahn-ehn shee-hehh) (¥10,000 bill)
- ✓ 五千円紙幣 **go-sen-en shihei** (goh-sehn-ehn shee-hehh) (¥5,000 bill)
- ✓ 二千円紙幣 **ni-sen-en shihei** (nee-sehn-ehn shee-hehh) (¥2,000 bill)
- ✓ 千円紙幣 **sen-en shihei** (sehn-ehn shee-hehh) (¥1,000 bill)
- ✓ 五百円硬貨 **go-hyaku-en kōka** (goh-hyah-koo-ehn kohh-kah) (¥500 coin)
- ✓ 百円硬貨 **hyaku-en kōka** (hyah-koo-ehn kohh-kah) (¥100 coin)
- ✓ 五十円硬貨 **go-jū-en kōka** (goh-jooo-ehn kohh-kah) (¥50 coin)
- ✓ 十円硬貨 **jū-en kōka** (jooo-ehn kohh-kah) (¥10 coin)
- ✓ 五円硬貨 **go-en kōka** (goh-ehn kohh-kah) (¥5 coin)
- ✓ 一円硬貨 **ichi-en kōka** (ee-chee-ehn kohh-kah) (¥1 coin)



The ¥2,000 bill note was issued in the year 2000 with limited quantity. If you have it, I recommend keeping it instead of using it! There's also an old-fashioned supplementary currency unit called **sen** (sehn), which is 1/100 of ¥1, and **厘 rin** (reen), which is 1/1,000 of ¥1. Currencies based on **sen** and **rin** were taken out of circulation in 1953 but are still used in some contexts, including stock markets.

To count coins and bills, use the counter **-mai**, as in **ichi-mai** (eeh-chee-mah-ee), **ni-mai** (nee-mah-ee), **san-mai** (sahn-mah-ee), and so on. (See Chapter 5 for more about **-mai** and other counters.) Now, you're ready to count, spend, borrow, or lend your **genkin**. Conjugate the **ru**-verb **kariru** (kah-ree-roo) (*to borrow*) and the **u**-verb **kasu** (kah-soo) (*to lend*).

Japanese Script

借りる
借りない
借り（ます）
借りて

Rōmaji

kariru
karinai
kari(masu)
karite

Pronunciation

kah-ree-roo
kah-ree-nah-ee
kah-ree(-mah-soo)
kah-ree-teh

<i>Japanese Script</i>	<i>Rōmaji</i>	<i>Pronunciation</i>
貸す	kasu	kah-soo
貸さない	kasanai	kah-sah-nah-ee
貸し (ます)	kashi(masu)	kah-shee(-mah-soo)
貸して	kashite	kah-shee-teh

Following are a few phrases that you can use to talk about **genkin**:

父から 5万円借りました。 **Chichi kara go-man-en karimashita.** (chee-chee kah-rah goh-mahn-ehn kah-ree-mah-shee-tah.) (*I borrowed ¥50,000 from my father.*)

500円貸してください。 **Go-hyaku-en kashite kudasai.** (goh-hyah-koo-ehn kah-shee-teh koo-dah-sah-ee.) (*Please loan me ¥500.*)

千円札 3枚ありますか。 **Sen-en-satsu san-mai arimasu ka.** (sehn-ehn-sah-tsoo sahn-mah-ee ah-ree-mah-soo kah.) (*Do you have three ¥1,000 bills?*)

一万円札しかありません。 **Ichi-man-en-satsu shika arimasen.** (ee-chee-mahn-ehn-sah-tsoo shee-kah ah-ree-mah-sehn.) (*I have only ¥10,000 bills.*)



To say *only*, place the particle **shika** (shee-kah) at the end of the noun and make the verb negative, as in the last example. You can read more on **shika** in Chapter 13.

Charge! Paying with plastic

A credit card is almost a must-have in today's world, particularly when you're traveling, because you need a credit card for renting a car and reserving a hotel room. In Japan, credit cards are accepted in many stores, hotels, and restaurants, but just in case, check first to see whether you can use them in a given establishment. For example, credit card acceptance is still limited in rural areas of Japan.

Conjugate the **u**-verb **tsukau** (tsoo-kah-oo) (*to use*). Just watch out for the **w** sound that appears only in the negative.

<i>Japanese Script</i>	<i>Rōmaji</i>	<i>Pronunciation</i>
使う	tsukau	tsoo-kah-oo
使わない	tsukawanai	tsoo-kah-wah-nah-ee
使い (ます)	tsukai(masu)	tsoo-kah-ee(-mah-soo)
使って	tsukatte	tsoo-kaht-teh



To ask whether you can use your credit card, you first need to know how to say *can*. For example, **tsukau** (tsoo-kah-oo) means *to use*, but **tsukaeru** (tsoo-kah-eh-roo) means *to be able to use* or *can use*. Then, you take this verb, **tsukaeru**, and conjugate it — for example, **Kurejitto kādo wa tsukaemasu ka** (koo-reh-jeet-toh kahh-doh wa tsoo-kah-eh-mah-soo kah.) (*Can I use a credit card?*) Turn to Chapter 13 to find out exactly how to make the *can* form of various verbs.



If you have multiple credit cards and you want to know which one is accepted at a particular shop or restaurant, use the particle **ka** (kah), which means *or*. You can use **ka** to list two or more choices. When listing more than two choices, simply place **ka** after each noun except the last one. A few examples may be helpful:

ビザかマスターカードは使えますか。 **Biza ka Masutā kādo wa tsukae-masu.** (bee-zah kah mah-soo-tahh kahh-doh wah tsoo-kah-eh-mah-soo.) (*Can I use a Visa or MasterCard?*)

アメリカンエキスプレスかディスカバーか J C Bは使えます。 **Amerikan Ekisupuresu ka Disukabā ka JCB wa tsukae-masu.** (ah-meh-ree-kahn eh-kee-soo-poo-reh-soo kah dee-soo-kah-bahh ka jehh-sheee-beeee wa tsoo-kah-eh-mah-soo.) (*If it's American Express, Discover, or JCB, you can use it.*)

空港か銀行で両替をします。 **Kūkō ka ginkō de ryōgae o shimasu.** (koo-kohh kah geen-kohh deh ryohh-gah-eh oh shee-mah-soo.) (*I'll exchange money at the airport or at the bank.*)

Perhaps you like to use your **debitto kādo** (deh-beet-toh kahh-doh) (*debit card*) to pay for everyday expenses. **Debitto kādo** have one advantage over **kurejitto kādo**: Because the money is deducted directly from your bank account, you can't spend more than you have.



To explain that you use your debit card to pay for purchases, say **Debitto kādo de haraimasu.** (deh-beet-toh kahh-doh deh hah-rah-ee-mah-soo.) (*I pay by debit card.*) Remember that the particle **de** (deh) marks the location of activity. It also specifies the tools and means for the action, as in the following examples:

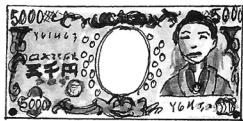
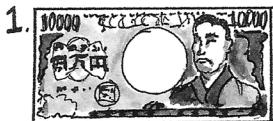
箸で食べます。 **Hashi de tabemasu.** (hah-shee deh tah-beh-mah-soo.) (*I eat with chopsticks.*)

鉛筆で書きます。 **Enpitsu de kakimasu.** (ehn-pee-tsoo deh kah-kee-mah-soo.) (*I write with a pencil.*)



Fun & Games

Identify the total amount of bills and coins in each of the following sets.
Answers are in Appendix D.



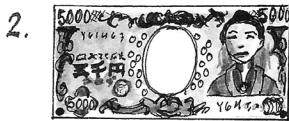








Illustration by Elizabeth Kurtzman



Chapter 16

Making Your Way Around: Planes, Trains, Taxis, and More

In This Chapter

- ▶ Embarking and disembarking with **noru** and **oriru**
- ▶ Flying through the airport with the greatest of ease
- ▶ Deciding on the best mode of transportation
- ▶ Traveling by train and boat
- ▶ Trying public transportation and road driving



ōtsū kikan (kohh-tsooo kee-kahn) (*transportation*) is an indispensable part of life. Choose the method that meets your needs. Which costs less, driving a car or taking a train? Which is less hectic, taking a subway or taking a cab? Which makes you feel safer, flying or driving? This chapter provides you with the essential phrases that you need to get around town by using various types of **kōtsū kikan**.

Getting On and Off with the Verbs Noru and Oriru

The verb **noru** (noh-roo) is used for all forms of transportation, including bicycles, buses, trains, ships, and airplanes. So its translation can be *to ride*, *to get on*, or *to get in* any form of transportation, depending on the context. Conjugate this **u**-verb as follows, paying close attention to the **r** syllables as you conjugate it:

<i>Japanese Script</i>	<i>Rōmaji</i>	<i>Pronunciation</i>
乗る	noru	noh-roo
乗らない	noranai	noh-rah-nah-ee
乗り (ます)	nori(masu)	noh-ree(-mah-soo)
乗って	notte	noht-teh

When using **noru** in a sentence, remember to mark the form of transportation that you're taking with the particle **ni** (nee), as in the following examples:

電車に乗る **densha ni noru** (dehn-shah nee noh-roo) (*to get on a train*)

飛行機に乗る **hikōki ni noru** (hee-kohh-kee nee noh-roo) (*to get on an airplane*)

自転車に乗る **jitensha ni noru** (jee-tehn-shah nee noh-roo) (*to ride a bicycle*)

タクシーに乗る **takushī ni noru** (tah-koo-sheee nee noh-roo) (*to get in a taxi*)

If you know the verb **noru**, you have to know the verb **oriru** (oh-ree-roo) (*to get off*), unless you want to live on an airplane. Conjugate this **ru**-verb as follows:

<i>Japanese Script</i>	<i>Rōmaji</i>	<i>Pronunciation</i>
降りる	oriru	oh-ree-roo
降りない	orinai	oh-ree-nah-ee
降り (ます)	ori(masu)	oh-ree(-mah-soo)
降りて	orite	oh-ree-teh

Like **noru**, you can use **oriru** for any form of transportation. Mark the place you're getting off from with the particle **kara** (kah-rah) (*from*) or the direct object particle **o** (oh). Here are a few examples:

飛行機から降りました。 **Hikōki kara orimashita.** (hee-kohh-kee kah-rah oh-ree-mah-shee-tah.) (*I got off the airplane.*)

後ろの出口から降りてください。 **Ushiro no deguchi kara orite kudasai.** (oo-shee-roh noh deh-goo-chee kah-rah oh-ree-teh koo-dah-sah-ee.) (*Please get off [the plane] via the rear exit.*)

新宿で電車を降りてバスに乘ります。 **Shinjuku de densha o orite basu ni norimasu.** (sheen-joo-koo deh dehn-shah oh oh-ree-teh bah-soo nee noh-ree-mah-soo.) (*I'll get off the train at Shinjuku and get on the bus.*)



In Japanese, saying you're taking some form of transportation isn't the same as saying you're going somewhere by some form of transportation. To specify what form of transportation you're using to go somewhere, use the particle **de** (deh). Place **de** at the end of the word for the mode of transportation, and place both of them somewhere before the verb. For example, **Hikōki de Hokkaidō ni ikimasu.** (hee-kohh-kee deh hohk-kah-ee-dohh nee ee-kee-mah-soo.) means *I'll go to Hokkaido by airplane.*

The general function of **de** is to specify how you perform a given action. Specifying the form of transportation is just one instance in which you use **de**. For other examples, flip to Chapter 3.

Asking about the Best Method of Transportation

Although you can access all kinds of transportation information — from schedules to fares — online nowadays, you still need to be able to ask the right questions when you’re wondering about the best transportation method for your purpose.



To ask questions like *Which transportation method is convenient?* or *Which one can we take to get there?*, use the question words **dono** (doh-noh) (*which*) and **dore** (doh-reh) (*which one*). So how do you know which *which* is which? If you’re asking about *which* of a particular thing, use **dono** and add the thing you’re asking about right after it, as in the following examples:

どのバスに乗れますか。 **Dono basu ni noremasu ka.** (doh-noh bah-soo nee noh-reh-mah-soo kah.) (*Which bus can I get on?*)

どの電車で行けますか。 **Dono densha de ikemasu ka.** (doh-noh dehn-shah deh ee-keh-mah-soo kah.) (*By which train can I go there?*)

Note that **noremasu** and **ikemasu** in the preceding sentences are the potential forms of **norimasu** and **ikimasu**, respectively. By *potential forms*, I mean the verb forms that bear the meaning of *can*. I tell you more about these forms in Chapter 13.

If the name of the thing that you’re asking about is understood in the context or is stated separately, you don’t have to repeat that word. Just use **dore** rather than **dono**.

どれに乘れますか。 **Dore ni noremasu ka.** (doh-reh nee noh-reh-mah-soo kah.) (*Which one can I get on?*)

どれで行けますか。 **Dore de ikemasu ka.** (doh-reh deh ee-keh-mah-soo kah.) (*By which one can I go there?*)



Perhaps you’re wondering how to ask which transportation method is fastest, most convenient, or most inexpensive. You just have to use the adverb **ichiban** (ee-chee-bahn) (*the most/-est*) for that. (If you recognize the word **ichiban** as the Japanese word for *first*, you’re right. It literally means *number one*.) Check out the following examples, and see Chapter 10 for more details on using **ichiban** to express *the most*:

どのバスが一番はやいですか。 **Dono basu ga ichiban hayai desu ka.** (doh-noh bah-soo gah ee-chee-bahn hah-yah-ee deh-soo kah.) (*Which bus is the fastest?*)

どの電車が一番便利ですか。 **Dono densha ga ichiban benri desu ka.** (doh-noh dehn-shah gah ee-chee-bahn behn-ree deh-soo kah.) (*Which train is the most convenient?*)

どれが一番安いですか。 **Dore ga ichiban yasui desu ka.** (doh-reh gah ee-chee-bahn yah-soo-ee deh-soo kah.) (*Which one is the cheapest?*)

If you want to make a comparison and alert listeners that they must choose from the list that you provide, you can list the items at the beginning of a question. Chapter 10 tells you how to do it in detail. For now, here are some examples:

タクシーと、電車と、バスでは、どれが一番はやいですか。 **Takushī to, densha to, basu de wa, dore ga ichiban hayai desu ka.** (tah-koo-shee toh, dehn-shah toh, bah-soo deh-wah, doh-reh gah ee-chee-bahn hah-yah-ee deh-soo kah.) (*Which are the fastest: taxis, trains, or buses?*)

飛行機と、車と、電車と、バスでは、どれが一番安全ですか。 **Hikōki to, kuruma to, densha to, basu de wa, dore ga ichiban anzen desu ka.** (hee-kohh-kee toh, koo-roo-mah toh, dehn-shah toh, bah-soo deh-wah, doh-reh gah ee-chee-bahn ahn-zehn deh-soo kah.) (*Which are the safest: airplanes, cars, trains, or buses?*)



If you're comparing people, use **dare** (dah-reh) (*who*) rather than **dore**. And if you're comparing locations, substitute **doko** (doh-koh) (*where*) for **dore**. To ask a question that compares just two items, use the question word **dochira** (doh-chee-rah) (*which one out of the two*), regardless of what the two items are. See Chapter 10 for more information about **dochira** and a complete discussion of comparisons.

Navigating the Airport

A **hikōki** (hee-kohh-kee) (*airplane*) is often necessary for speedy vacation travel and business trips, even if you're afraid of heights. And hopping on a commercial plane means jumping all the hurdles that come with going to the **kūkō** (kooo-kohh) (*airport*). Check out the following sections for vocabulary that helps you navigate the boarding process, go through immigration and customs, and exit the airport to explore your destination.

Now boarding: Making it to the plane

Arrive at the airport early to check your luggage and get through security so you can enjoy the time at the airport before boarding instead of making a mad dash for the plane as the door closes. You'll need these words for that:

- ✓ 便 **bin** (been) (*flight*)
- ✓ チケット **chiketto** (chee-keht-toh) (*ticket*)
- ✓ ゲート **gēto** (gehh-toh) (*gate*)
- ✓ 保安検査場 **hoan kensajō** (hoh-ahn-kehn-sah-johh) (*security*)
- ✓ 窓 **mado** (mah-doh) (*window*)
- ✓ 窓側の席 **mado gawa no seki** (mah-doh gah-wah noh seh-kee) (*window seat*)
- ✓ 免税店 **menzeiten** (mehn-zehh-tehn) (*duty-free shops*)
- ✓ 席 **seki** (seh-kee) (*seat*)
- ✓ シートベルト **shītoberuto** (sheee-toh-beh-roo-toh) (*seatbelt*)
- ✓ 出国手続き **shukkoku tetsuzuki** (shook-koh-koo teh-tssoo-zoo-kee) (*embarkation procedure [filling out paperwork when leaving Japan]*)
- ✓ 搭乗券 **tōjōken** (tohh-johh-kehn) (*boarding pass*)
- ✓ 搭乗手続き **tōjō tetsuzuki** (tohh-johh teh-tssoo-zoo-kee) (*check-in*)
- ✓ 通路側の席 **tsūro gawa no seki** (tsooo-roh gah-wah noh seh-kee) (*aisle seat*)



Bin is a word that means *flight*, and it also functions as a counter that specifies which flight. If you need to specify a flight with its flight number, add **-bin** right after the number. For example, **18-bin** (jooo-hah-chee-been) means *Flight 18*.

After you get on the plane, just relax. Ask the **furaitoatendanto** (foo-rah-ee-toh ah-tehn-dahn-toh) (*flight attendants*) any questions you may have, such as the following:

- ✓ どのターミナルに着きますか。 **Dono tāminaru ni tsukimasu ka.** (doh-noh tahh-mee-nah-roo nee tssoo-kee-mah-soo kah.) (*Which terminal are we arriving at?*)
- ✓ 映画は何時からですか。 **Eiga wa nan-ji kara desu ka.** (ehh-gah wah nahnn-jee kah-rah deh-soo kah.) (*What time does the movie start?*)
- ✓ 何番ゲートに着きますか。 **Nan-ban gēto ni tsukimasu ka.** (nahnn-bahn gehhh-toh nee tssoo-kee-mah-soo kah.) (*Which gate are we arriving at?*)
- ✓ 何時に着きますか。 **Nan-ji ni tsukimasu ka.** (nahnn-jee nee tssoo-kee-mah-soo kah.) (*What time will we arrive?*)

You may wonder how to say *to fly* in Japanese because you say things like *I flew from New York to San Francisco last week* or *He's going to fly to Las Vegas next week* all the time. Well, Japanese usually say *to go* in such contexts and say *to fly* only figuratively because it's the airplane that flies, not the people

themselves. But if you want to be figurative, here's how to conjugate the u-verb **tobu** (toh-boo) (*to fly*).

<i>Japanese Script</i>	<i>Rōmaji</i>	<i>Pronunciation</i>
飛ぶ	tobu	toh-boo
飛ばない	tobanai	toh-bah-nah-ee
飛び (ます)	tobi(masu)	toh-bee(-mah-soo)
飛んで	tonde	tohn-deh

Going through immigration

Before entering a foreign country, you have to meet the very serious folks in the **nyūkoku shinsa** (nyooo-koh-koo sheen-sah) (*immigration*) area. Here, everyone has to stand in line, and the line can be very long if multiple jumbo planes arrive at the same time. Make sure to have your passport in hand and be ready for some of these questions and requests:

- ✓ ビザは。 **Biza wa.** (bee-zah wah.) (*How about your visa?*)
- ✓ どこに泊まりますか。 **Doko ni tomarimasu ka.** (doh-koh nee toh-mah-ree-mah-soo kah.) (*Where are you staying?*)
- ✓ 住所は。 **Jūsho wa.** (jooo-shoh wah.) (*Your address?*)
- ✓ 住所を書いてください。 **Jūsho o kaite kudasai.** (jooo-shoh oh kah-ee-teh koo-dah-sah-ee.) (*Please write your address.*)
- ✓ 観光ですか。 **Kankō desu ka.** (kahn-kohh deh-soo kah.) (*Are you here for sightseeing?*)
- ✓ お名前は。 **O-namae wa.** (oh-nah-mah-eh wah.) (*Your name?*)
- ✓ パスポートを見せてください。 **Pasupōto o misete kudasai.** (pah-soo-pohh-toh oh mee-seh-teh koo-dah-sah-ee.) (*Please show me your passport.*)
- ✓ 仕事ですか。 **Shigoto desu ka.** (shee-goh-toh deh-soo kah.) (*Are you here for business?*)

Chapter 14 gives you more details and Japanese terminology related to passports and visas.

Getting through customs

After you get through immigration, go to the **tenimotsu hikiwatashijō** (teh-nee-moh-tsoo hee-kee-wah-tah-shee-johh) (*baggage claim*) and pick up your suitcases, bags, boxes, or whatever. Head straight to **zeikan** (zehh-kahn) (*customs*) after you have all your belongings. The lines at customs usually aren't

as long as the lines at immigration because not many people have items to declare. However, you should be sure to pay the **zeikin** (zehh-keen) (*tax*), if necessary. Certain items are **menzei** (mehn-zehh) (*duty-free*) only if you bring less than a certain amount or quantity of the item with you. Be familiar with the following questions and phrases to breeze through customs:

- ✓ あそこで税金を払ってください。 **Asoko de zeikin o haratte kudasai.**
(ah-soh-koh deh zehh-keen oh hah-raht-teh koo-dah-sah-ee.) (*Pay the tax over there, please.*)
- ✓ 身の回りのものです。 **Minomawari no mono desu.** (mee-noh-mah-wah-ree noh moh-noh deh-soo.) (*They're my personal belongings.*)
- ✓ 申告するものはありませんか。 **Shinkoku suru mono wa arimasen ka.**
(sheen-koh-koo soo-roo moh-noh wah ah-ree-mah-sehn kah.) (*Is there anything you want to declare?*)

You may be asked to **Sūtsukēsu o akete kudasai.** (sooo-tssoo-kehh-soo oh ah-keh-teh koo-dah-sah-ee.) (*Open your suitcase, please.*), so you want to be able to conjugate the **ru-verb akeru** (ah-keh-roo) (*to open*):

<i>Japanese Script</i>	<i>Rōmaji</i>	<i>Pronunciation</i>
開ける	akeru	ah-keh-roo
開けない	akenai	ah-keh-nah-ee
開け（ます）	ake(masu)	ah-keh(-mah-soo)
開けて	akete	ah-keh-teh

Leaving the airport

When you're done at customs, grab your bags, pass through the exit, and go to the **tōchaku robī** (tohh-chah-koo roh-beeee) (*arrival gate*). You may see hundreds of faces looking at you, which can make you feel like you're either a movie star or a terrible criminal. Most of these people are just looking for their friends and relatives, not you, so don't get too excited.

If no one is meeting you, you can find ground transportation information at the **chiketto kauntā** (chee-keht-toh kah-oon-tahh) (*ticket counter*) or **annaijō** (ahn-nah-ee-joh) (*information counter*). You can use questions like the following to arrange your transportation from the airport or any other location:

- ✓ モノレールはどこで乗れますか。 **Monorēru wa doko de noremasu ka.**
(moh-noh-rehh-roo wah doh-koh deh noh-reh-mah-soo kah.) (*Where can I catch the monorail?*)
- ✓ 東京まで成田エクスプレスでいくらかかりますか。 **Tōkyō made Narita Ekusupuresu de ikura kakarimasu ka.** (tohh-kyohh mah-deh nah-ree-tah)

ehk-koo-soo-poo-reh-soo deh ee-koo-rah kah-kah-ree-mah-soo kah.) (*How much does it cost to go to Tokyo by the Narita Express?*)

- ✓ 品川行きのリムジンバスはありますか。 **Shinagawa yuki no rimujin basu wa arimasu ka.** (shee-nah-gah-wah yoo-kee noh ree-moo-jeen bah-soo wah ah-ree-mah-soo kah.) (*Do you have a limousine bus to Shinagawa?*)
- ✓ 次の東京駅行きのリムジンバスは何時ですか。 **Tsugi no Tōkyō eki yuki no rimujin basu wa nanji desu ka.** (tsoo-gee noh tohh-kyohh eh-kee yoo-kee noh ree-moo-jeen bah-soo wah nahm-jee deh-soo kah.) (*What time is the next limousine bus bound for Tokyo Station?*)

All Aboard: Hopping on a Train or Boat

Trains and boats are some of the oldest methods of transportation — at least since people quit using chariots — but they're still popular in the modern world. The following sections give you the terminology you need to talk about these rides in Japanese. (Sorry, I ran out of room to add a section on chariots.)

Now entering the station: Riding the train

Traveling by **densha** (dehn-shah) (*train*) is special because you go through many **eki** (eh-kee) (*train stations*), each of which represents the people who live or work in that town. In some **eki**, you see many businesspeople, but in others you see mostly children and their moms.

Check the direction of your train:

- ✓ 下り電車 **kudari densha** (koo-dah-ree dehn-shah) (*down train*)
- ✓ 上り電車 **nobori densha** (noh-boh-ree dehn-shah) (*up train*)
- ✓ 大阪行き **Ōsaka yuki** (ohh-sah-kah yoo-kee) (*bound for Osaka*)



You may be asking yourself, "What in the world are up trains and down trains?" You're in luck; I have the answer. **Nobori densha** (*up train*) refers to any train in Japan traveling toward Tokyo, and **kudari densha** (*down train*) refers to any train traveling away from Tokyo. Tokyo really is the center of Japan, as a glance at a map of Japan shows you. **Note:** These strange terms may give you the impression that Tokyo is the highest point in Japan and that the farthest location from Tokyo must therefore be below sea level. But the allusion to altitude is only figurative, even if somewhat elitist on the part of Tokyo. The point of using these two terms is just to distinguish the directions of each railroad line, not the altitude.

When you take a train, make sure you know what time it leaves and arrives. Conjugate the verb **deru** (deh-roo) (*to leave*) and **tsuku** (tsoo-koo) (*to arrive*). **Deru** is a **ru**-verb, but **tsuku** is an **u**-verb.

<i>Japanese Script</i>	<i>Rōmaji</i>	<i>Pronunciation</i>
出る	deru	deh-roo
出ない	denai	deh-nah-ee
出 (ます)	de(masu)	deh(-mah-soo)
出て	dete	deh-teh

<i>Japanese Script</i>	<i>Rōmaji</i>	<i>Pronunciation</i>
着く	tsuku	tsoo-koo
着かない	tsukanai	tsoo-kah-nah-ee
着き (ます)	tsuki(masu)	tsoo-kee(-mah-soo)
着いて	tsuite	tsoo-ee-teh



Remember to check the **jikokuhyō** (jee-koh-koo-hyohh) (*timetable*) at the station. Be ready for the 24-hour system if you're traveling in Japan. **Jūgo-ji** (jooo-goh-jee) (15:00 [*fifteen o'clock*]) means **gogo 3-ji** (goh-goh sahn-jee) (3:00 p.m.). Watch out for two important keywords on the timetable: **hatsu** (hah-tsoo) (*departure*) and **chaku** (chah-koo) (*arrival*). They're short forms of **hassha suru** (hahs-shah soo-roo) (*to depart*) and **tōchaku suru** (tohh-chah-koo soo-roo) (*to arrive*). Take a look at a few examples (for complete coverage on telling time, check out Chapter 5):

1 6 時 1 5 分 発 16-ji 15-fun **hatsu** (jooo-roh-koo-jee jooo-goh-foon hah-tsoo) (16:15 [4:15 p.m.] *departure*)

2 0 時 5 7 分 着 20-ji 57-fun **chaku** (nee-jooo-jee goh-jooo-nah-nah-foon chah-koo) (20:57 [8:57 p.m.] *arrival*)

7 時 5 分 東京 発 1 0 時 7 分 大阪 着 7-ji 5-fun **Tōkyō hatsu** 10-ji 7-fun **Ōsaka chaku** (shee-chee-jee goh-foon tohh-kyohh hah-tsoo jooo-jee nah-nah-foon ohh-sah-kah chah-koo) (7:05 a.m. *Tokyo departure*, 10:07 a.m. *Osaka arrival*)

Depending on how much of a hurry you're in, choose from one of these types of trains, listed in descending order of speed and distance:

- ✓ 新幹線 **shinkansen** (sheen-kahn-sehn) (*bullet train*)
- ✓ 特急 **tokkyū** (tohk-kyooo) (*super-express*)
- ✓ 快速 **kaisoku** (kah-ee-soh-koo) (*rapid*)
- ✓ 急行 **kyūkō** (kyooo-kohh) (*express*)
- ✓ 普通 **futsū** (foo-tsoooo) (*regular or local*)



Shinkansen got its English name, *bullet train*, from the bullet shape of the lead car in the 0 series, or first generation, of the train. These trains run on special tracks at top speeds of about 300 kilometers per hour (186 miles per hour) and connect all the major cities of **Honshū** (hohn-shooo), the main island of Japan. **Shinkansen** service is also available to a number of cities in Kyushu. Lines connecting parts of Hokkaido are under construction.

For all trains, the **unchin** (oon-cheen) (*fare*) is different for adults and children. Be sure to specify the number of adults and the number of children when buying your tickets. And ask whether discounts and special assistance are available for seniors and handicapped people.

Use the counter **-mai** to express the number of tickets you want to purchase. (See Chapter 5 for information on counters.) Also specify whether you need a round-trip or one-way ticket. If you're taking the **shinkansen** or another super-express train in Japan, you need to buy two tickets: a super-express ticket plus the regular passenger ticket. Here are some common ticket terms:

- ✓ 乗車券 **jōshaken** (johh-shah-kehn) (*passenger ticket*)
- ✓ 片道 **katamichi** (kah-tah-mee-chee) (*one-way ticket*)
- ✓ 切符 **kippu** (keep-poo) (*tickets*)
- ✓ 往復 **ōfuku** (ohh-foo-koo) (*round-trip ticket*)
- ✓ 特急券 **tokkyūken** (tohk-kyooo-kehn) (*super-express ticket*)

You may make a request like the following as you purchase your ticket:

- ✓ 名古屋まで大人 3枚往復お願いします。 **Nagoya made otona san-mai Ōfuku onegaishimasu.** (nah-goh-yah mah-deh oh-toh-nah sahn-mah-ee ohh-foo-koo oh-neh-gah-ee-shee-mah-soo.) (*To Nagoya, three round-trip tickets for adults, please.*)
- ✓ 大阪まで大人 1枚子ども 2枚お願いします。 **Ōsaka made otona ichi-mai to kodomo ni-mai onegaishimasu.** (ohh-sah-kah mah-deh oh-toh-nah ee-chee-mah-ee toh koh-doh-moh nee-mah-ee oh-neh-gah-ee-shee-mah-soo.) (*To Osaka, one ticket for an adult and two tickets for children, please.*)
- ✓ 東京まで片道 1枚。 **Tōkyō made katamichi ichi-mai.** (tohh-kyohh mah-deh kah-tah-mee-chee ee-chee-mah-ee.) (*To Tokyo, one one-way ticket, please.*)
- ✓ 東京までの乗車券と特急券を下さい。 **Tōkyō made no jōshaken to tokkyūken o kudasai.** (tohh-kyohh mah-deh noh johh-shah-kehn toh tohk-kyooo-kehn oh koo-dah-sah-ee) (*A passenger ticket and a super-express ticket to Tokyo, please.*)

Find out which **hōmu** (hohh-moo) (*platform*) you're leaving from, say the number with the counter **-ban** (bahn), and add **hōmu**, as in **ichi-ban hōmu** (ee-chee-bahn hohh-moo) (*platform one*), **ni-ban hōmu** (nee-bahn hohh-moo) (*platform two*), and **san-ban hōmu** (sahn-bahn hohh-moo) (*platform three*).

Setting sail: Cruising around by boat

You may have a lot of chances to go to nearby islands or to towns across a lake, bay, or cove near your home. Some people even commute to work by ferry. What a romantic way to start the workday! Use some of the following terms to travel by water or just to have fun:

- ✓ ボート **bōto** (bohh-toh) (*boat*)
- ✓ フェリー **ferī** (feh-reeee) (*ferry*)
- ✓ 船 **fune** (foo-neh) (*ship*)
- ✓ ヨット **yotto** (yoht-toh) (*yacht*)

If you don't know how to swim, find the life jackets right after you board. I'm just kidding. Relax and enjoy the nice breeze. If you spend some time on the water, you'll come ashore feeling refreshed!

Conquering Public Transportation

Sometimes the best way of getting around in larger cities, is to take public transportation. Whether you intend to travel by **basu** (bah-soo) (*bus*), **chikatetsu** (chee-kah-teh-tsoo) (*subway*), or **takushī** (tah-koo-sheeee) (*taxi*), the next sections have you covered.



When you make up your mind about which form of public transportation you want to use, say **ni suru** (nee soo-roo) (*to decide on*). The verb **suru** is an irregular verb, and its polite counterpart is **shimasu**. Now you can understand the following decisions:

- ✓ 地下鉄にします。 **Chikatetsu ni shimasu.** (chee-kah-teh-tsoo nee shee-mah-soo.) (*I'll choose the subway.*)
- ✓ タクシーにします。 **Takushī ni shimasu.** (tah-koo-sheeee nee shee-mah-soo.) (*I'll take a taxi.*)

Riding a bus

Basu (bah-soo) (*buses*) are inexpensive and convenient, and they can take you across town or across the country. Taking a long-distance bus rather than a plane or train can save you a lot of money.

Go to a bus terminal or a bus stop, and find out which **basu** you should take. The **unchin** (oon-cheen) (*fare*) may be a flat rate, or it may vary depending on how far you go. Either way, put the **unchin** in the designated box. Here's how to conjugate the **ru**-verb **ireru** (ee-reh-roo) (*to put*).

Japanese Script	Rōmaji	Pronunciation
入れる	ireru	ee-reh-roo
入れない	irenai	ee-reh-nah-ee
入れ (ます)	ire(masu)	ee-reh(-mah-soo)
入れて	irete	ee-reh-teh

I also recommend memorizing the following words:

- ✓ バスターミナル **basu tāminaru** (bah-soo tahh-mee-nah-roo) (*bus terminal*)
- ✓ バス停 **basu-tei** (bah-soo-tehh) (*bus stop*)
- ✓ 乗り換え **norikae** (noh-ree-kah-eh) (*transfer*)



Don't forget to ask the driver for a transfer if you need to change buses.

Taking the subway

The **chikatetsu** (chee-kah-teh-tsoo) (*subway*) is inexpensive, especially compared to taking a taxi. It can also bring you to your destination much more quickly than a bus can. Considering all these factors, the **chikatetsu** may offer you the most convenience for your dollar.

When you take a subway, be careful not to miss your station. To express which station is yours — **hito-tsū-me** (hee-toh-tsoo-meh) (*the first one*), **futa-tsū-me** (foo-tah-tsoo-meh) (*the second one*), and so on — head to the discussion of ordinal numbers in Chapter 5 and use the ordinal counter **-me**.

Hailing a taxi

Takushī (tah-koo-sheee) (*taxis*) are very convenient — they come to where you are, so you don't need to walk anywhere. Unlike subways, you don't need to figure out which one you should take. And unlike buses, you don't need

to wait for them. Just call a taxi to pick you up wherever you are. If you have three or four people in your group, taking a **takushī** may be cheaper than taking a train or a bus!

Here are some phrases you may say or hear in a taxi:

- ✓ 美術館までお願ひします。 **Bijutsukan made onegai shimasu.** (bee-joo-tsoo-kahn mah-deh oh-neh-gah-ee shee-mah-soo.) (*Please go to the art museum.*)
- ✓ どちらまで。 **Dochira made.** (doh-chee-rah mah-deh.) (*To where?*)
- ✓ 空港までいくらぐらいかかりますか。 **Kūkō made ikura gurai kakari-masu ka.** (kooo-kohh mah-deh ee-koorah goo-rah-ee kah-kah-ree-mah-soo kah.) (*How much does it cost to the airport?*)
- ✓ 着きましたよ。 **Tsukimashita yo.** (tsoo-kee-mah-shee-tah yoh.) (*We're here.*)



When the **takushī** driver is about to give you the **otsuri** (oh-tsoo-ree) (*change*), you can refuse it by saying **Otsuri wa kekkō desu** (oh-tsoo-ree wah kehk-kohh deh-soo) (*Please keep the change.*). **Kekkō desu** (kehk-kohh deh-soo) means *good* or *fine* in some contexts, but it means *no thank you* in other contexts. It may sound like a contradiction, but in English you sometimes say *I'm fine*, after being asked *Would you like some coffee?* when what you mean is *no thank you*, right? That's the spirit of **kekko desu** as *no thank you*.

Talkin' the Talk



Kent is trying to hail a taxi. A taxi finally stops in front of him, and the door opens. (Track 36)

Kent: **Akagi Eigo Gakkō made onegaishimasu.**
 ah-kah-gee ehh-goh gahk-kohh mah-deh
 oh-neh-gah-ee-shee-mah-soo.
 To Akagi English School, please.

Driver: **Yokohama Eki no mae desu ne.**
 yoh-koh-hah-mah eh-kee noh mah-eh deh-soo neh.
 That's in front of Yokohama Station, right?

Kent: **Hai.**
 hah-ee.
 Yes.

Driver: **O-kyaku-san wa eigo no sensei desu ka.**
 oh-kyah-koo-sahn wah ehh-goh noh sehn-sehh deh-soo kah.
 Are you an English teacher?

Kent: **Hai.**
 hah-ee.
 Yes.

The taxi arrives in front of Akagi English School.

Driver: **Hai, tsukimashita yo.**
 hah-ee, tsoo-kee-mah-shee-tah yoh.
 Okay, we're here.

Kent: **Ikura desu ka.**
 ee-koo-rah deh-soo kah.
 How much?

Driver: **750-en desu.**
 nah-nah-hyah-koo-goh-jooo-en deh-soo.
 750 yen.

Kent: **Jā, dōzo. Otsuri wa kekkō desu.**
 jahh, dohh-zoh. oh-tsoo-ree wah kehk-kohh deh-soo.
 Here you are. Keep the change.

Driver: **Ā, arigatō gozaimasu.**
 ahh, ah-ree-gah-tohh goh-zah-ee-mah-soo.
 Oh, thank you very much.

Words To Know

eigo gakkō	ehh-goh gahk-kohh	English school
made	mah-deh	up to
no mae	noh mah-eh	in front of
Tsukimashita.	tsoo-kee-mah-shee-tah.	(We) arrived.
otsuri	oh-tsoo-ree	change

Driving Around

In smaller communities, driving a **kuruma** (koo-roo-mah) (*car*) may be your only option for getting around. (And even in bigger communities, you may just prefer to drive.) To talk about driving in Japanese, use **nten suru** (oon-tehn soo-roo) (*to drive*). Conjugating this verb is a piece of cake if you know how to conjugate the irregular verb **suru** (soo-roo) (*to do*).

<i>Japanese Script</i>	<i>Rōmaji</i>	<i>Pronunciation</i>
運転する	nten suru	oon-tehn soo-roo
運転しない	nten shinai	oon-tehn shee-nah-ee
運転し (ます)	nten shi(masu)	oon-tehn shee(-mah-soo)
運転して	nten shite	oon-tehn shee-teh

If you're on a trip and you didn't drive to your destination, you'll need to rent a car. And if you're driving in Japan, you'll need a crash course in Japanese road signs. The following sections give you the necessary vocabulary for renting a vehicle and provide an overview of the most important road signs.



Driving a car in Japan is a bit tricky. You have to drive on the left side, and your steering wheel is on the right side. The roads are clean and nice but very narrow. Bicycles and pedestrians always have the right of way on the neighborhood streets. And the highways are in great condition, but the tolls are outrageous.

Renting a car

To rent a **kuruma**, head to a **rentakā shoppu** (rehn-tah-kahh shohp-poo) (*car rental shop*). Be sure to ask about the rental car's features:

- ✓ エアコン **eakon** (eh-ah-kohn) (*air conditioning*)
- ✓ カーナビ **kānabi** (kahh-nah-bee) (*car navigation, GPS*)
- ✓ マニュアル **manyuaru** (mah-nyoo-ah-roo) (*stick shift*)
- ✓ オートマチック **ōtomachikku** (ohh-toh-mah-cheek-koo) (*automatic transmission*)
- ✓ ステレオ **sutereo** (soo-teh-reh-oh) (*stereo*)

Show your **unten menkyoshō** (oon-tehn-mehn-kyoh-shohh) (*driver's license*) to the clerk at the car-rental agency. Note that you need a **kokusai unten menkyoshō** (koh-koo-sah-ee oon-tehn mehn-kyoh-shohh) (*international driving permit*) in addition to your driver's license from your home country when you drive in Japan, unless you have a Japanese license. After that's out of the way, you can get to the details. Following are some common phrases that you may find useful when renting a car:

- ✓ 保険をかけます。 **Hoken o kakemasu.** (hoh-kehn oh kah-keh-mah-soo.) (*I'll take the insurance policy.*)
- ✓ 小型の車を借りたいんですが。 **Kogata no kuruma o karitai-n-desu ga.** (koh-gah-tah noh koo-roo-mah oh kah-ree-tah-een-deh-soo gah.) (*I'd like to rent a small-size car [but do you have one?].*)
- ✓ 今日から金曜日まで使いたいんです。 **Kyō kara kinyōbi made tsukai-tai-n-desu.** (kyooo kah-rah keen-yohh-bee mah-deh tsoo-kah-ee-tah-een-deh-soo.) (*I want it today through Friday.*)
- ✓ 木曜日に返します。 **Mokuyōbi ni kaeshimasu.** (moh-koo-yohh-bee nee kah-eh-shee-mah-soo.) (*I'll return it on Thursday.*)

Conjugate the verbs **kariru** (kah-ree-roo) (*to rent*) and **kaesu** (kah-eh-soo) (*to return*) — two essential words for visiting a rental-car agency. **Kariru** is a **ru**-verb, and **kaesu** is an **u**-verb. The conjugation table for **kariru** is in Chapter 15. Here's the one for **kaesu**:

<i>Japanese Script</i>	<i>Rōmaji</i>	<i>Pronunciation</i>
返す	kaesu	kah-eh-soo
返さない	kaesanai	kah-eh-sah-nah-ee
返し（ます）	kaeshi(masu)	kah-eh-shee(-mah-soo)
返して	kaeshite	kah-eh-shee-teh

The International Driving Permit

国際運転免許証 **Kokusai Unten Menkyoshō** (koh-koo-sah-ee oon-tehn mehn-kyoh-shohh) (*International Driving Permit*) is a document recognized by more than 100 countries, including Japan and the United States. It's supplemental to your official government-issued license and serves translation and identification purposes, so you must also carry

your driver's license from your home country when you use it.

Note that **Kokusai Unten Menkyoshō** is only for short-term travelers. If you want to stay in Japan longer term, you need to convert your license from your home country to a Japanese license.

Deciphering road signs

I bet you can understand most **dōro hyōshiki** (dohh-roh hyohh-shee-kee) (*road signs*) in Japan, but just in case, Table 16-1 shows you the essential ones.

Table 16-1

Japanese Road Signs

Road Sign	Japanese	Pronunciation	Meaning
	止まれ tomare	toh-mah-reh	<i>Stop</i>
	進入禁止 shinnyū kinshi	sheen-nyooo keen-shee	<i>Do Not Enter</i>
	一方通行 ippō tsūkō	eep-pohh tsooo-kohh	<i>One Way</i>
	駐車可 chūshaka	chooo-shah-kah	<i>Parking Permitted</i>
	駐車禁止 chūsha kinshi	chooo-shah keen-shee	<i>No Parking</i>

Are you ready to drive in Japan? Here are a couple of final reminders: In Japan, left turns on a red light aren't permitted like right turns on red lights are in the United States. Also, keep in mind that the colors of the traffic lights in Japan are the same, but they call the three colors red, yellow, and blue (rather than red, yellow, and green like in the United States).



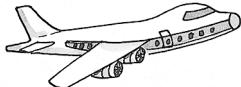
Fun & Games

Write the Japanese word for the following types of transportation on the corresponding line. The answers are in Appendix D.

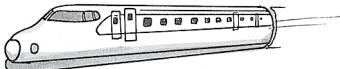
1.



2.



3.



4.



5.

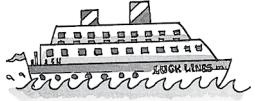


Illustration by Elizabeth Kurtzman



Chapter 17

Finding a Place to Stay

In This Chapter

- ▶ Finding accommodations
- ▶ Reserving the room
- ▶ Navigating the check-in process
- ▶ Knowing how to claim your stuff
- ▶ Cruising through check-out

Selecting the right **shukuhaku shisetsu** (shoo-koo-hah-koo shee-seh-tsoo) (*accommodations*) can make any trip you take more enjoyable. After all, each day of your adventure starts and ends there. This chapter walks you through the process of finding your **shukuhaku shisetsu**: choosing the right place, making a reservation, checking in, and checking out. Enjoy your visit!

Picking the Right Accommodations for Your Needs

Select your accommodations according to your needs and budget. For example, if you're planning a family trip to a resort area near the coast, get a nice **hoteru** (hoh-teh-roo) (*hotel*) that features easy access to the beach. Here are the many options available to you:

- ✓ ビジネスホテル **bijinesu hoteru** (bee-jee-neh-soo hoh-teh-roo) (*business hotel*)
- ✓ ホテル **hoteru** (hoh-teh-roo) (*hotel*)
- ✓ 観光ホテル **kankō hoteru** (kahn-kohh hoh-teh-roo) (*tourist's hotel*)
- ✓ カプセルホテル **kapuseru hoteru** (kah-poo-seh-roo hoh-teh-roo) (*capsule hotel*)

- ✓ 民宿 **minshuku** (meen-shoo-koo) (*a private home that offers lodging and meals to tourists*)
- ✓ ホテル **mōteru** (mohh-teh-roo) (*motel*)
- ✓ 旅館 **ryokan** (ryoh-kahn) (*Japanese-style inn*)
- ✓ ユースホステル **yūsu hosuteru** (yooo-soo hoh-soo-teh-roo) (*youth hostel*)



A **hoteru** is a Western-style hotel. You can speak English in most major **hoteru** in Japan. You can also eat a Western-style breakfast, sleep on a bed rather than a **futon** (foo-tohn) (*thin, quilted mattress*), and use a Western-style bath. (Flip to Chapter 6 for info on the traditional Japanese **futon** sleeping experience.) These amenities may be familiar to you and put you at ease. If you prefer to stay even more inside your comfort zone, you may want to stay at a property owned by a well-known hotel chain.

For more-authentic, Japanese-style accommodations, go to a **ryokan**. At the entrance to the inn, a **nakai-san** (nah-kah-ee-sahn) (*maid*) in a kimono welcomes you. Enjoy a big bath with other guests if you aren't shy (see the nearby sidebar on Japanese-style bathing). When you get back to your room for the evening, the **futon** is already spread out on the **tatami** (tah-tah-mee) (*straw mat*) floor in your bedroom, and dinner is brought right to the living/dining area of your room. Wear a special kimono-like cotton robe, a **yukata** (yoo-kah-tah), while you enjoy your dinner. In the morning, have a Japanese-style breakfast (turn to Chapter 6 for examples of these dishes).

A **minshuku** is similar to a bed-and-breakfast in Western countries, but it often provides dinner as well as breakfast. All the **minshuku** guests eat their meals together in a big dining room with a **tatami** floor. Each guest has to spread out her own **futon** when she sleeps and fold it up again in the morning. It's like visiting your uncle's or aunt's big house in the countryside.

If you're young and your budget is very tight (or does that go without saying?), you can stay in a **yūsu hosuteru**. You have to share a room and/or a bathroom with other travelers and follow the hostel's strict rules, but you can save your money for another part of your trip.

If you just need to stay somewhere for your business trip, opt for **bijinesu hoteru**. Their rooms are simple but neat, relatively comfortable, very functional, and convenient for businesspeople. If you need a much cheaper hotel than business hotels in major business cities in Japan, you can stay in a unique, interesting, super-simple hotel called **kapuseru hoteru**. Each room is just as big as a single bed; one person can barely stand up in it. You can think of these hotels as beehives. Each room has a TV and a radio. The hotel has a sauna on some floor of the building that can be shared by guests. The capsule hotels charge very little; they're mostly used by male office workers, who tend to work late and often miss the last train of the day. In fact, many capsule hotels are for men only.



Bathing Japanese-style

A Japanese bath is very different from a Western-style bath. A Japanese bathtub is very deep, and the water is very hot. The bath is only for soaking and relaxing; washing your body, face, or hair in the bath is taboo. You wash yourself outside the tub, in a space with faucets, showers, and mirrors on the wall where you can sit on a low stool as you wash. Entering the bath prior to washing and rinsing your body is considered a major breach of etiquette.

Public baths are everywhere in Japan, although they are separated by gender. In a Japanese

public bath, you have to get completely naked. No swimsuits. Stripping down around strangers may be a bit embarrassing, but you don't know any of the other people, so what the heck? Go for it! The tub in a public bath is huge — it's like a giant hot tub (but it's not a heated swimming pool, so don't plan on taking a few laps). And come out of the tub every 15 minutes or so; otherwise, you'll become a dizzy octopus from the heat.

Of course, all of these accommodation options will fulfill your most basic need: They'll all provide you with a place to sleep! Here's how to conjugate the **ru-verb** **neru** (neh-roo) (*to sleep*).

<i>Japanese Script</i>	<i>Rōmaji</i>	<i>Pronunciation</i>
寝る	neru	neh-roo
寝ない	nenai	neh-nah-ee
寝 (ます)	ne(masu)	neh(-mah-soo)
寝て	nete	neh-teh

Narrowing Your Choice Further

After you know the type of accommodations you're interested in, you can start looking into specific places. Consider the size of the rooms, the various amenities offered, and the overall cost to help you make your decision. The following sections help you do just that, in addition to helping you figure out how to express possible scenarios with *if*.

Looking into room size and amenities

Ask the folks at the front desk about the types of **heya** (heh-yah) (*rooms*) the hotel has. Suppose you're traveling with your mother, spouse, and two

teenage children. Would you prefer to get a big room that everyone can stay in together, or do you want a separate room for your kids and mom? (I know what my answer would be.) Is anyone in your family a heavy snorer? You need a good night's sleep to have some energy for your trip, so you may want to consider multiple smaller rooms (or just bring earplugs). Here's the vocabulary you need to talk about room sizes:

- ✓ ダブル **daburu** (dah-boo-roo) (*double*)
- ✓ セミダブル **semi-daburu** (seh-mee-dah-boo-roo) (*semi-double/a room with a full-size bed*)
- ✓ シングル **shinguru** (sheen-goo-roo) (*single*)
- ✓ ツイン **tsuin** (tsoo-een) (*twin*)

If you're not sure whether a twin room is bigger than a double room, just ask **Dochira no heya ga hiroi desu ka.** (doh-chee-rah noh heh-yah gah hee-roh-ee deh-soo kah.) (*Which room is bigger?*) Expect to hear this line in response: **Tsuin no heya ga hiroi desu.** (tsoo-een noh heh-yah gah hee-roh-ee deh-soo.) (*A twin room is bigger.*) (For more info on using **dochira** [*which one*] and making other comparisons, see Chapter 10.)



Ask whether the place you're interested in staying at has the following amenities:

- ✓ 売店 **baiten** (bah-ee-tehn) (*shop*)
- ✓ ビジネスセンター **bijinesu sentā** (bee-jee-neh-soo sehn-tahh) (*business center*)
- ✓ 駐車場 **chūshajō** (chooo-shah-johh) (*parking lot*)
- ✓ ジム **gimu** (gee-moo) (*gym*)
- ✓ インターネット **intānetto** (een-tahh-neht-toh) (*Internet*)
- ✓ 自動販売機 **jidōhanbaiki** (jee-dohh-hahn-bah-ee-kee) (*vending machine*)
- ✓ 金庫 **kinko** (keen-koh) (*safe*)
- ✓ 無線 LAN **musen LAN** (moo-sehn rahn) (*wireless LAN [local area network]*)
- ✓ プール **pūru** (pooo-roo) (*swimming pool*)
- ✓ 冷蔵庫 **reizōko** (rehh-zohh-koh) (*refrigerator*)
- ✓ レストラン **resutoran** (reh-soo-toh-rahn) (*restaurant*)

Also ask about any service you may need during your stay. Popular services include

- ✓ マッサージ **massāji** (mahs-sahh-jee) (*massage*)
- ✓ モーニングコール **mōningu kōru** (mohh-neen-goo kohh-roo) (*wake-up call*)

- ✓ ランドリーサービス **randonī sābisu** (rahn-doh-reee sahh-bee-soo) (*laundry service*)
- ✓ ルームサービス **rūmu sābisu** (rooo-moo sahh-bee-soo) (*room service*)

If you have a special request, ask for it when you make a reservation. For example:

- ✓ 広い部屋はありますか。 **Hiroi heyā wa arimasu ka.** (hee-roh-ee heh-yah wah ah-ree-mah-soo kah.) (*Do you have a spacious room?*)
- ✓ 喫煙ルームですか。 **Kitsuen rūmu desu ka.** (kee-tsoo-ehn rooo-moo deh-soo kah.) (*Is it a smoking room?*)
- ✓ 禁煙の部屋ですか。 **Kin'en no heyā desu ka.** (keen-ehn noh heh-yah deh-soo kah.) (*Is it a nonsmoking room?*)
- ✓ 静かな部屋をお願いします。 **Shizuka na heyā o onegai shimasu.** (shee-zoo-kah nah heh-yah oh oh-neh-gah-ee shee-mah-soo.) (*A quiet room, please.*)
- ✓ 冷蔵庫のある部屋がいいんですが。 **Reizōko no aru heyā ga ii n desu ga.** (rehh-zohh-koh noh ah-roo hey-yah gah een-deh-soo gah.) (*I prefer a room with a refrigerator.*)
- ✓ スイートをお願いします。 **Suitō o onegai shimasu.** (soo-eee-toh oh oh-neh-gah-ee shee-mah-soo.) (*Suite, please.*)

Comparing costs

Cost is a major criterion when you choose a hotel. Suppose one hotel charges you \$150 per day, and another hotel charges you \$200 per day. That \$50 difference may seem small, but if you're staying for ten days, the difference becomes \$500. That's quite a bit of money. (Note that most Japanese hotels charge for each person even if multiple people share one room, so watch out!) Figuring out the total cost isn't always simple, but talking about it in Japanese can be with the info in this section. I show you how to compare prices, how to express concepts like *twice* and *three times as expensive*, and how to express percentages.

Chapter 10 shows you in detail how to use the particle **yorī** (yoh-ree) (*than*). You can use that same particle to compare your accommodation options. For example, **Yūsu hosuteru wa yasui desu.** (yooo-soo-hoh-soo-teh-roo wah yah-soo-ee deh-soo.) means *Youth hostels are cheap*. If you want to say *Youth hostels are cheaper than hotels*, just stick in **hoteru yorī** (hoh-teh-roo yoh-ree) (*than hotels*) right before the adjective **yasui desu**. So **Yūsu hosuteru wa hoteru yorī yasui desu.** (yooo-soo hoh-soo-teh-roo wah hoh-teh-roo yoh-ree yah-soo-ee deh-soo.) means *Youth hostels are cheaper than hotels*.



To make a comparison by saying that something is a number of times more (or less) than something else, use the counter **-bai** (bah-ee). For example, to say *Japanese-style inns are three times more expensive than youth hostels.*, say **Ryokan wa yūsu hosuteru yori san-bai takai desu.** (ryoh-kahn wah yooo-soo hoh-soo-teh-roo yoh-ree sahn-bah-ee tah-kah-ee deh-soo.). Following are the possible counters you may want to use when comparing hotel costs:

- ✓ 2倍 **ni-bai** (nee-bah-ee) (*twice*)
- ✓ 3倍 **san-bai** (sahn-bah-ee) (*three times*)
- ✓ 3.5倍 **san-ten-go-bai** (sahn-tehn-goh-bah-ee) (*three and a half times*)
- ✓ 4倍 **yon-bai** (yohn-bah-ee) (*four times*)
- ✓ 5倍 **go-bai** (goh-bah-ee) (*five times*)

And here's one more convenient phrase that you can use when you compare prices. To express percentages, use the counter **-pāsento** (pahh-sehn-toh) (*percent*). For example, to say *Canadian hotels are 25 percent cheaper than American hotels.*, say **Kanada no hoteru wa Amerika no hoteru yori 25-pāsento yasui desu.** (kah-nah-dah noh hoh-teh-roo wah ah-meh-ree-kah noh hoh-teh-roo yoh-ree nee-jooo-goh-pahh-sehn-toh yah-soo-ee deh-soo.). You can also use the same percentage symbol (%) in Japanese as you do in English, as you can see in the following list of percentages you may find handy to use in your comparisons of different accommodation costs.

- ✓ 10% **jū-pāsento** (joop-pahh-sehn-toh) (*10 percent*)
- ✓ 15% **jū-go-pāsento** (jooo-goh-pahh-sehn-toh) (*15 percent*)
- ✓ 20% **ni-jū-pāsento** (nee-joop-pahh-sehn-toh) (*20 percent*)
- ✓ 100% **hyaku-pāsento** (hyah-koo-pahh-sehn-toh) (*100 percent*)

Considering each possible scenario with nara

You have to think about so many different possibilities when you're planning your trip accommodations, such as "If Bob and Sue come, we'll need to get an extra room." or "We can save \$100 if we go in May rather than June." One way to express these hypothetical scenarios in Japanese is to use **nara** (nah-rah) to mean *if*.

You can add **nara** at the end of a verb or an adjective in the plain/informal form, except that the linking **da** (the plain present affirmative form of **desu**) that directly follows a noun or a **na**-type adjective must drop. Check out the following examples.

日本に行くなら旅館に泊まりましょう。 **Nihon ni iku nara ryokan ni tomarimashō.** (nee-hohn nee ee-koo nah-rah ryoh-kahn nee toh-mah-ree-mah-shohh.) (*Let's stay at a Japanese-style inn if we're going to Japan.*)

安いなら泊まります。 **Yasui nara tomarimasu.** (yah-soo-ee nah-rah toh-mah-ree-mah-soo.) (*If it's cheap, I'll stay there.*)

観光なら京都がいいですよ。 **Kankō nara Kyōto ga ii desu yo.** (kahn-kohh nah-rah kyohh-toh gah eee deh-soo yoh.) (*If you're interested in sightseeing, Kyoto is good. [Literally: If for sightseeing, Kyoto is good.]*)

買い物が好きなら新宿がいいですよ。 **Kaimono ga suki nara Shinjuku ga ii desu yo.** (kah-ee-moh-noh gah soo-kee nah-rah sheen-joo-koo gah eee deh-soo yoh.) (*If you like shopping, Shinjuku is a great place for you.*)

朝食が付くならこのホテルにしましょう。 **Chōshoku ga tsuku nara kono hoteru ni shimashō.** (chohh-shoh-koo gah tsoo-koo nah-rah koh-noh hoh-teh-roo nee shee-mah-shohh.) (*If breakfast is included, let's stay in this hotel.*)

お金がないならカプセルホテルに泊まった方がいいですよ。 **O-kane ga nai nara kapuseru hoteru ni tomatta hō ga ii desu yo.** (oh-kah-neh gah nah-ee nah-rah kah-poo-seh-roo hoh-teh-roo nee toh-maht-tah hohh gah eee deh-soo yoh.) (*If you don't have money, you'd better stay at capsule hotels.*)



The final example in the preceding list gives advice by using the past tense and the phrase **hō ga ii desu**. Refer to Chapter 18 for more details about **hō ga ii desu**.

Making a Room Reservation



Japanese doesn't have simple verbs that mean *to plan* or *to make a reservation*. To say *to plan* and *to make a reservation*, you combine the verb **suru** (soo-roo) (*to do*) with a noun — **keikaku** (keh-kah-koo) (*plan*) and **yoyaku** (yoh-yah-koo) (*reservation*). So **keikaku suru** means *to plan*, and **yoyaku suru** means *to make a reservation*. You simply conjugate the **suru** part of the verb. **Suru** is an irregular verb; I conjugate it for you in Chapter 13.

Before calling a hotel to make a reservation, you need to have a clear idea of how long you're planning to stay. To start, conjugate the **u**-verb **tomaru** (*to stay*).

Japanese Script

泊まる

泊まらない

泊まり (ます)

泊まって

Rōmaji

tomaru

tomaranai

tomari(masu)

tomatte

Pronunciation

toh-mah-roo

toh-mah-rah-nah-ee

toh-mah-ree(-mah-soo)

toh-maht-teh



Remember to use the particles **kara** (kah-rah) (*from*) and **made** (mah-deh) (*until*) to talk about the duration of your visit. **Kara** and **made** look like English prepositions, but they have to follow, not precede, the relevant phrases. For example, *from the 15th* in English is *the 15th from* in Japanese. And *until the 23rd* in English is *the 23rd until* in Japanese. So you now know **15-nichi kara** (jooo-goh-nee-chee kah-rah) means *from the 15th*, and **23-nichi made** (nee-jooo-sahn-nee-chee mah-deh) means *until the 23rd*. Take a look at a few more examples to really help this tidbit sink in:

来週の月曜日から木曜日までお願いします。 **Raishū no getsuyōbi kara mokuyūbi made onegaishimasu.** (rah-ee-shoo oh geh-tssoo-yohh-bee kah-rah moh-koo-yohh-bee mah-deh oh-neh-gah-ee-shee-mah-soo.) (*From Monday to Thursday of next week, please.*)

このコースは6月から8月までです。 **Kono kōsu wa roku-gatsu kara hachi-gatsu made desu.** (koh-noh kohh-soo wah roh-koo-gah-tssoo kah-rah hah-chee-gah-tssoo mah-deh deh-soo.) (*This course is from June to August.*)

今日からあさってまで泊まります。 **Kyō kara asatte made tomarimasu.** (kyohh kah-rah ah-saht-teh mah-deh toh-mah-ree-mah-soo.) (*I'll stay from today until the day after tomorrow.*)

Use the counter **-haku** (hah-koo) to specify the number of nights that you're staying. **-haku** is the counter for nights that one stays outside of his or her home. Some numbers use **-paku** (pah-koo), though, so remember to watch out for the **-haku/-paku** alternation. You may not like it, but you just have to memorize it.

- ✓ 一泊 **ip-paku** (eep-pah-koo) (*one night*)
- ✓ 二泊 **ni-haku** (nee-hah-koo) (*two nights*)
- ✓ 三泊 **san-paku** (sahn-pah-koo) (*three nights*)
- ✓ 四泊 **yon-haku** (yoohn-hah-koo) (*four nights*)
- ✓ 五泊 **go-haku** (goh-hah-koo) (*five nights*)
- ✓ 六泊 **rop-paku** (rohp-pah-koo) (*six nights*)

Checking In

As soon as you arrive at a hotel, a **bōi-san** (bohh-ee-sahn) (*bellhop*) helps you with your baggage. (If you're in Japan, you don't need to tip him. Isn't that amazing?) Go to the **furonto** (foo-rohn-toh) (*front desk*).



If you don't have a **yoyaku** (yoh-yah-koo) (*reservation*), ask whether a **kūshitsu** (koo-shee-tsoo) (*vacant room*) is available.

- ✓ 予約はしませんでしたが、空室はありますか。 **Yoyaku wa shimasen deshita ga, kūshitsu wa arimasu ka.** (yoh-yah-koo wah shee-mah-sehn deh-shee-tah gah, kooo-shee-tsoo wah ah-ree-mah-soo kah.) (*I didn't make a reservation, but do you have any vacancy?*)
- ✓ 今日泊まりたいんですが、部屋は空いていますか。 **Kyō tomaritai-n-desu ga, heyā wa aite imasu ka.** (kyohh toh-mah-ree-tah-een-deh-soo gah, heh-yah wah ah-ee-teh ee-mah-soo kah.) (*I'd like to stay here tonight, but do you have a vacancy?*)

You may hear one of the following statements in reply:

- ✓ 申し訳ございません。只今、空室はございません。 **Mōshiwake gozaimasen. Tadaima, kūshitsu wa gozaimasen.** (mohh-shee-wah-keh goh-zah-ee-mah-sehn. tah-dah-ee-mah, kooo-shee-tsoo wah goh-zah-ee-mah-sehn.) (*I'm terribly sorry. We don't have any vacancy now.*)
- ✓ 今日は満室です。 **Kyō wa manshitsu desu.** (kyohh wah mahn-shee-tsoo deh-soo.) (*No vacancy tonight.*)
- ✓ シングルの部屋がございます。 **Shinguru no heyā ga gozaimasu.** (sheen-goo-roo noh heh-yah gah goh-zah-ee-mah-soo.) (*There's a single room.*)

If you have a reservation or the hotel has a vacancy, check in! Hotel clerks are trained to speak very politely. Before they find out your **namae** (nah-mah-eh) (*name*), they address you as **okyaku-sama** (oh-kyah-koo-sah-mah), which literally means something along the lines of *Mr./Ms./Mrs. Customer*. After they learn your name, they address you with your last name followed by **-sama** (sah-mah) (*Mr./Ms./Mrs.*), which is the super-polite, businesslike version of **-san** (sahn). (Note that they never address you as **anata** [ah-nah-tah] [*you*]; for the scoop on **anata**, see Chapter 3.) Next, they ask you for your **jūsho** (jooo-shoh) (*address*) and **denwa-bangō** (dehn-wah-bahn-gohh) (*telephone number*). You know they're asking for *your* information because they add a polite prefix **o-** or **go-** before these words. (See Chapters 4 and 12 for more on the prefixes **o-** and **go-**, respectively.). So they may say something like one of the following:

お客様のお名前は。 **O-kyaku-sama no o-namae wa.** (oh-kyah-koo-sah-mah noh oh-nah-mah-eh wah.) (*Your name?*)

ご住所は。 **Go-jūsho wa.** (goh-jooo-sho wah.) (*Your address?*)

ご自宅のお電話番号は。 **Go-jitaku no o-denwa bangō wa.** (goh-jee-tah-koo noh oh-dehn-wah bahn-gohh wah.) (*Your home telephone number?*)

After that process is complete, get your room number and the **kagi** (kah-gee) (*key*) or **kādo kī** (kahh-doh keee) (*key card*) for your room to complete the check-in. The clerk tells you which floor your room is on by using a numeral plus the counter **-kai** (see Chapter 10 for full details on the counter **-kai**). So the clerk may say something like the following:

- ✓ 7階の705号室でございます。 **Nana-kai no nanahyaku-go-gōshitsu de gozaimasu.** (nah-nah-kah-ee noh nah-nah-hyah-koo-goh-gohh-shee-tsoo deh goh-zah-ee-mah-soo.) (*Your room is Room 705 on the seventh floor.*)
- ✓ こちらがカードキーでございます。 **Kochira ga kādo kī de gozaimasu.** (koh-chee-rah gah kahh-doh keee deh goh-zah-ee-mah-soo) (*This is your key card.*)



Refer to your room by using a numeral plus the counter **-gōshitsu** (gohh-shee-tsoo). Is it **502-gōshitsu** (goh-hyah-koo-nee-gohh-shee-tsoo) (*Room 502*) or **2502-gōshitsu** (nee-sehn-goh-hyah-koo-nee-gohh-shee-tsoo) (*Room 2502*)?

As you check in, you may want to ask some of the following questions:

- ✓ 駐車場はどこですか。 **Chūshajō wa doko desu ka.** (chooo-shah-johh wah doh-koh deh-soo kah.) (*Where is the parking garage?*)
- ✓ チェックアウトは何時ですか。 **Chekku-auto wa nan-ji desu ka.** (chehk-koo-ah-oo-toh wah nahn-jee deh-soo kah.) (*When is the check-out time?*)
- ✓ 朝食は何時からですか。 **Chōshoku wa nan-ji kara desu ka.** (chohh-shoh-koo wah nahn-jee kah-rah deh-soo kah.) (*What time do you start serving breakfast?*)
- ✓ 朝食は何時までですか。 **Chōshoku wa nan-ji made desu ka.** (chohh-shoh-koo wah nahn-jee mah-deh deh-soo kah.) (*Until what time do you serve breakfast?*)

Talkin' the Talk



Yoshi Kitayama has just arrived at Hotel Tokyo and is checking in.
(Track 37)

Yoshi: **Sumimasen. Kyō kara yon-haku yoyaku shita-n-desu ga.**
 soo-mee-mah-sehn. kyohh kah-rah yohn-hah-koo
 yoh-yah-koo shee-tahn-deh-soo gah.
 Excuse me. I made a reservation for a four-night stay starting today.

- Clerk: **O-namae wa.**
oh-nah-mah-eh wah.
Your name, sir?
- Yoshi: **Kitayama Yoshi desu.**
kee-tah-yah-mah yoh-shee deh-soo.
Yoshi Kitayama.
- Clerk: **Kitayama Yoshi-sama de gozaimasu ne.**
kee-tah-yah-mah yoh-shee-sah-mah deh goh-zah-ee-mah-soo neh.
Mr. Yoshi Kitayama, correct?
- Yoshi: **Hai.**
hah-ee.
Yes.
- The clerk checks the computer.
- Clerk: **Kyō kara yon-haku, o-hitori-sama, shinguru no o-heya de gozaimasu ne.**
kyohh kah-rah yohn-hah-koo, oh-hee-toh-ree-sah-mah, sheen-goo-roo noh oh-heh-yah deh goh-zah-ee-mah-soo neh.
Starting today — four nights, one person, a single room, right?
- Yoshi: **Hai.**
hah-ee.
Yes.
- Clerk: **703-gōshitsu de gozaimasu. Kochira ga kagi de gozaimasu.**
nah-nah-hyah-koo-sahn-gohh-shee-tsoo deh goh-zah-ee-mah-soo. koh-chee-rah gah kah-gee deh goh-zah-ee-mah-soo.
It's Room 703. Here's your key.
- Yoshi: **Ā, dōmo.**
ahh, dohh-moh.
Thank you.

Words to Know

yoyaku	yoh-yah-koo	reservation
kyō kara	kyohh kah-rah	starting today
hitori	hee-toh-ree	one person
shinguru	sheen-goo-roo	single
heya	heh-yah	room
kagi	kah-gee	key

Keeping Track of What's Yours during Your Stay

Lots of mix-ups can happen when you're staying in a big hotel with 300 other guests. Keep track of your **sūtsukēsu** (sooo-tsoo-kehh-soo) (*suitcases*) and **kagi** (kah-gee) (*keys*). The following sections show you a couple of ways to do just that.

Using possessive pronouns

Possessive pronouns allow you to indicate who owns what. To say *yours* and *mine* in Japanese, take the words that mean *you* and *I* and add the particle **no** after them. For example, **anata** (ah-nah-tah) is *you*, and **anata no** (ah-nah-tah noh) is *yours*. How about *mine*? **Watashi** (wah-tah-shee) is *I*, so **watashi no** (wah-tah-shee noh) is *mine*. Piece of cake, right? Now you can say **Watashi no desu!** (wah-tah-shee noh deh-sool!) (*That's mine!*) to someone who is very clearly reaching for your keys. Just don't say **Watashi no desu!** every time a guest touches stuff in your house. You'll sound like a five-year-old child who doesn't know how to share his toys.

Although **anata no** (*yours*) is perfectly correct grammatically, you should avoid saying it as best you can because the use of **anata** (*you*) sounds snobby or even rude when used for one's superiors such as teachers, elders, bosses, and customers. Here's a helpful breakdown of how you can avoid using **anata**:



- If you know the person's name, use the name followed by **san** rather than **あなた anata**, as in **田中さんのですか。 Tanaka-san no desu ka.** (tah-nah-kah-sahn noh deh-soo kah.) (*Is it yours, Mr. Tanaka?*).

- ✓ If you don't know the person's name and he or she is your customer, you can use お客様 o-kyaku-sama (oh-kyah-koo-sah-mah), as in お客様のですか。O-kyaku-sama no desu ka. (oh-kyah-koo sah-mah noh deh-soo kah.) (*Is it yours?*).
- ✓ If the stranger is someone who was sitting behind you and you just noticed that he left something on the chair, you can say お宅 otaku, as in お宅のですか。Otaku no desu ka. (oh-tah-koo-noh deh-soo kah.) (*Is it yours?*).
- ✓ If you're addressing a stranger in a relatively informal, friendly context — like at a supermarket — you can use family-relative terms such as お姉さん onēsan (oh-nehh-sahn) (*older sister*), おばさん obasan (oh-bah-sahn) (*aunt*), and おばあさん obāsan (oh-bahh-sahn) (*grandmother*). If the stranger is a woman in middle-age, you can address her with obasan. If she appears to be old, you can address her with obāsan. However, some obāsan believe that they should be addressed with obasan and some obasan believe that they should be addressed with onēsan. So I recommend you address the person using the one-level-younger term. Then the lady will smile at you. (For additional family terminology, see Chapter 4.)

And luckily, if you know *yours* and *mine* in Japanese, you already know *your* and *my* in Japanese. They're exactly the same — almost like a buy-one-get-one-free coupon at the supermarket. If **watashi no** is followed by a noun, such as **kagi**, it means *my*: **Watashi no kagi desu.** (wah-tah-shee noh kah-gee deh-soo.) means *That's my key.*

Take a look at Table 17-1. It contains all the basic personal pronouns and their possessive counterparts.

Table 17-1 Personal and Possessive Pronouns

<i>Personal Pronouns</i>	<i>Ownership Words</i>
私 watashi (wah-tah-shee) (I/me)	私の watashi no (wah-tah-shee noh) (my/mine)
私たち watashi tachi (wah-tah-shee tah-chee) (we/us)	私たちの watashi tachi no (wah-tah-shee tah-chee noh) (our/ours)
あなた anata (ah-nah-tah) (you [singular])	あなたの anata no (ah-nah-tah noh) (your/yours [singular])

(continued)

Table 17-1 (continued)

<i>Personal Pronouns</i>	<i>Ownership Words</i>
あなたたち anata tachi (ah-nah-tah tah-chee) (you [plural])	あなたの anata tachi no (ah-nah-tah tah-chee noh) (your/yours [plural])
彼 kare (kah-reh) (he/him)	彼の kare no (kah-reh noh) (his)
彼女 kanojo (kah-noh-joh) (she/her)	彼女の kanojo no (kah-noh-joh noh) (her/hers)
彼ら karera (kah-reh-rah) (they/them)	彼らの karera no (kah-reh-rah noh) (their/theirs)

Using “uchi” possessively

Even though the word **uchi** (oo-chee) means *house*, *household*, or *inside*, Japanese use **uchi no** (oo-chee noh) to mean *my* or *our*. Here are some examples of **uchi no** in action:

うちの社員はよく働きます。 **Uchi no shain wa yoku hatarakimasu.** (oo-chee noh shah-een wah yoh-koo hah-tah-rah-kee-mah-soo.) (*Our [company's] employees work very hard.*)

うちの大学には図書館が二つあります。 **Uchi no daigaku ni wa toshokan ga futatsu arimasu.** (oo-chee noh dah-ee-gah-koo nee wah toh-shoh-kahn gah foo-tah-tssoo ah-ree-mah-soo.) (*There are two libraries in our university.*)

うちの子供はあまり野菜を食べません。 **Uchi no kodomo wa amari yasai o tabemasen.** (oo-chee noh koh-doh-moh wah ah-mah-ree yah-sah-ee oh tah-beh-mah-sehn.) (*Our children don't eat vegetables very much.*)

うちの庭には桜の木があります。 **Uchi no niwa ni wa sakura no ki ga arimasu.** (oo-chee noh nee-wah nee wah sah-koo-rah noh kee gah ah-ree-mah-soo.) (*There's a cherry tree in my/our garden.*)

うちの旅行会社は本社が名古屋にあります。Uchi no ryokō-gaisha wa honsha ga Nagoya ni arimasu. (oo-chee noh ryoh-kohh-gah-ee-shah wah hohn-shah gah nah-goh-yah nee ah-ree-mah-soo.) (*The headquarters of our travel agency is located in Nagoya.*)

Checking Out

It's **chekku-auto** (chehk-koo-ah-oo-toh) (*check-out*) time! Pack up your stuff and don't forget anything in your room. Go to front desk to **chekku-auto** and pay your bill. You may see some additional charges on your bill, such as the following:

- ✓ 電話料 **denwaryō** (dehn-wah-ryohh) (*telephone usage charge*)
- ✓ 飲食料 **inshokuryō** (een-shoh-koo-ryohh) (*food and drink charge*)
- ✓ インターネット利用料 **intānetto riyōryō** (een-tahh-neht-toh ree-yohh-ryohh) (*Internet usage charge*)
- ✓ クリーニング代 **kurīningudai** (koo-reeee-neen-goo-dah-ee) (*laundry charge*)
- ✓ 税金 **zeikin** (zehh-keen) (*tax*)

If you need further assistance from the hotel staff after checking out, just ask them.

5時まで荷物を預かってください。**Go-jī made nimotsu o azukatte kudasai.** (goh-jee mah-deh nee-moh-tsoo oh ah-zoo-kaht-teh koo-dah-sah-ee.) (*Please keep my baggage here until 5:00.*)

領収書を下さい。**Ryōshūsho o kudasai.** (ryohh-shooo-shoh oh koo-dah-sah-ee.) (*Please give me the receipt.*)

タクシーをよんでくださいませんか。**Takushī o yonde kudasai masen ka.** (tah-koo-sheee oh yohn-deh koo-dah-sah-ee mah-sehn kah.) (*Would you mind calling a taxi?*)



By adding **masen ka** (mah-sehn kah) at the end of a request, you can make the request sound a bit softer and more polite. That is, **Takushī o yonde kudasai masen ka.** sounds much more polite than **Takushī o yonde kudasai.** **Masen** is just a polite suffix in the negative form, and **ka** is the question particle. **Masen ka** means something like *Wouldn't you?* or *Would you mind?*



Fun & Games

Fill in each blank with the appropriate Japanese word from the following list.

朝食 chōshoku

ルームサービス rūmu sābisu

チェックアウト chekku-auto

無線 LAN musen LAN

空室 kūshitsu

The answers are in Appendix D.

1. _____ は何時ですか。
_____ wa nan-ji desu ka.

When is the check-out time?

2. _____ はありますか。
_____ wa arimasuka.

Do you have wireless LAN?

3. _____ ありますか。
_____ wa arimasu ka.

Do you offer room service?

4. _____ ありますか。
_____ wa arimasu ka.

Any vacancies?

5. _____ は付きますか。
_____ wa tsukimasu ka.

Is breakfast included?



Chapter 18

Handling Emergencies

In This Chapter

- ▶ Finding help when you need it
- ▶ Seeking a doctor's office for diagnosis and treatment
- ▶ Talking to the police and tackling legal trouble

Focusing on all the good things in life (like eating, shopping, having fun, and making friends) is great, but knowing what to do when an illness, injury, or emergency pops up is important. Handling these situations isn't a big deal when you know the ABCs of emergencies and sickness. This chapter provides you with the confidence and the Japanese to act wisely when faced with an emergency, whether that emergency is medical or legal.

Asking (Or Shouting!) for Help

The simplest and quickest way to ask for help is to say **Tasukete**. (tah-soo-keh-teh.) (*Help me.*) **Tasukete** is the **te**-form of the verb **tasukeru** (tah-soo-keh-roo) (*to help*). It's in the **te**-form because it's the product of omitting **kudasai** (koo-dah-sah-ee) from the complete request sentence **Tasukete kudasai**. (tah-soo-keh-teh koo-dah-sah-ee.) (*Please help me.*) As I explain in Chapter 10, you express a request by using a verb in the **te**-form plus **kudasai**. **Kudasai** is a sort of helping verb for expressing a request. In an informal context or in an emergency, you can omit it. See Chapter 10 to find out more about **kudasai**.

Conjugate the **ru**-verb **tasukeru**.

<i>Japanese Script</i>	<i>Rōmaji</i>	<i>Pronunciation</i>
助ける	tasukeru	tah-soo-keh-roo
助けない	tasukanai	tah-soo-keh-nah-ee
助け (ます)	tasuke(masu)	tah-soo-keh(-mah-soo)
助けて	tasukete	tah-soo-keh-teh

When you're really in a panic, what should you shout? Just the vowel **a** (ah)? Its longer counterpart **ā** (aah)? Or maybe its super-long counterpart **ääääää** (aaaaaaaaah)? Even a crow can do that. To be more sophisticated than a crow, use the following phrases and scream as loudly as possible:

- ✓ **だれか！ Dareka!** (dah-reh-kah!) (*Someone help!*)
- ✓ **泥棒！ Dorobō!** (doh-roh-bohh!) (*A thief!*)
- ✓ **火事！ Kaji!** (kah-jee!) (*Fire!*)

If you see someone who appears to be having a non-life-threatening problem, don't scream. Just ask one of the following questions:

- ✓ **だいじょうぶですか。 Daijōbu desu ka.** (dah-ee-johh-boo deh-soo kah.)
(*Are you all right?*)
- ✓ **どうしたんですか。 Dōshita-n-desu ka.** (dohh-shee-tahn-deh-soo kah.)
(*What happened?*)



Be a good person and offer help to those in need. The best way to express your helpful intentions is to ask a question that ends in **-mashō ka** (mah-shohh kah) (*shall I*). **-mashō ka** follows a verb in the stem form. The stem form of **yobu** (yoh-boo) (*to call*) is **yobi** (yoh-bee); therefore, **Keisatsu o yobimashō ka.** (kehh-sah-tsoo oh yoh-bee-mah-shohh kah.) means *Shall I call the police?* Following are some additional examples of **-mashō ka** in action:

ご家族に電話しましょうか。 Go-kazoku ni denwa shimashō ka. (goh-kah-zoh-koo nee dehn-wah shee-mah-shohh kah.) (*Shall I telephone your family?*)

救急車を呼びましょうか。 Kyūkyūsha o yobimashō ka. (kyooo-kyooo-shah oh yoh-bee-mah-shohh kah.) (*Shall I call an ambulance?*)

荷物を持ちましょうか。 Nimotsu o mochimashō ka. (nee-moh-tsoo oh moh-chee-mah-shohh kah.) (*Shall I hold your luggage?*)

運転しましょうか。 Unten shimashō ka. (oon-tehn shee-mah-shohh kah.) (*Shall I drive?*)

If you think you can't handle a situation alone, ask the people around you to help out too. To express your request, use a verb in the **te-form** and add **kudasai** (koo-dah-sah-ee), as noted earlier in this section. Here are a few examples:

ちょっと手伝ってください。 Chotto tetsudatte kudasai. (choht-toh teh-tsoo-daht-teh koo-dah-sah-ee.) (*Please give me a hand.*)

警察に電話してください。 Keisatsu ni denwa shite kudasai. (kehh-sah-tsoo nee dehn-wah shee-teh koo-dah-sah-ee.) (*Phone the police, please.*)

救急車を呼んでください。 **Kyūkyūsha o yonde kudasai.** (kyooo-kyooo-shah oh yohn-deh koo-dah-sah-ee.) (*Call an ambulance, please.*)

消防署に電話してください。 **Shōbōsho ni denwa shite kudasai.** (shohh-bohh-shoh nee dehn-wah shee-teh koo-dah-sah-ee.) (*Please phone the fire department.*)

Seeking Medical Attention

If you find yourself in need of medical care while in a predominantly Japanese-speaking area, you're going to wish you had a grasp of some basic doctor-related terminology. Never fear. The following sections walk you through a visit to a doctor's office or a hospital.

Looking for a doctor

If you happen to get sick in Japan, you may want to see an **isha** (ee-shah) (*medical doctor*), or more respectfully, **o-ishā-san** (oh-ee-shah-sahn) (*medical doctor*). When you address your doctor, say **sensei** (sehn-sehh). **Sensei** works as a title not only for teachers but also for doctors, lawyers, and politicians.

Depending on your problem, you may have to find a specialist. One way to refer to specialists is to add **i** (ee) after the name of the specialty. **I** (ee) means a *medical doctor*, but you can't use it by itself. It makes sense only if you combine it with another word or a meaning unit. For example, **ganka** (gahn-kah) means *ophthalmology*, and **ganka-i** (gahn-kah-ee) means *ophthalmologist*. Check out the following list:

- ✓ 眼科医 **ganka-i** (gahn-kah-ee) (*eye doctor*)
- ✓ 皮膚科医 **hifuka-i** (hee-foo-kah-ee) (*dermatologist*)
- ✓ 耳鼻咽喉科医 **jibi-inkōka-i** (jee-bee-een-kohh-kah-ee) (*ear/throat/mouth doctor*)
- ✓ 内科医 **naika-i** (nah-ee-kah-ee) (*internist*)
- ✓ 産婦人科医 **sanfujinka-i** (sahn-foo-jeen-kah-ee) (*obstetrician and gynecologist*)
- ✓ 整形外科医 **seikei-geka-i** (sehh-kehh-geh-kah-ee) (*orthopedist*)
- ✓ 歯科医 **shika-i** (shee-kah-ee) (*dentist*)
- ✓ 小兒科医 **shōnika-i** (shohh-nee-kah-ee) (*pediatrician*)



An insight into Japanese healthcare

In the United States, people usually see their doctors by appointment, but in Japan, they usually walk in. If you arrive early in the morning, you can get in to see the doctor earlier. If you come a bit late, you may have to wait for a few hours. Not having to make an appointment is nice, but the trade-off is that you have to wait for quite a while in the waiting room.

The Japanese government offers a uniform health insurance policy to all, and the premium and copay are pretty affordable except for special cases. Japan also has a very organized care-management system for elderly and handicapped people.

Going to a hospital

Japanese have a couple different kinds of hospitals: **daigaku byōin** (dah-ee-gah-koo byohh-een) (*university hospital*) and **kyūkyū byōin** (kyooo-kyooo byohh-een) (*emergency hospital/emergency room*). If you have a medical emergency, head straight to the nearest **kyūkyū byōin**. Make sure you have your identification and insurance cards with you, though, because you'll have to present them when you arrive. These words will be helpful:

- ✓ 健康保険 kenkō hoken (kehn-kohh hoh-kehn) (*health insurance*)
- ✓ 健康保険証 kenkō hokenshō (kehn-kohh hoh-kehn-shohh) (*health insurance card*)
- ✓ 身分証明書 mibun shōmeisho (mee-boon shohh-mehh-shoh) (*identification*)

Also, you may well hear the following questions, so you'd best get familiar with them:

- ✓ 胸は痛くありませんか。 **Mune wa itaku arimasen ka.** (moo-neh wah ee-tah-koo ah-ree-mah-sehn kah.) (*Do you have chest pain? [Literally: Don't you have chest pain?]*)
- ✓ 吐き気はしますか。 **Hakike wa shimasu ka.** (hah-kee-keh wah shee-mah-soo kah.) (*Do you feel nauseous?*)
- ✓ 呼吸は苦しくありませんか。 **Kokyū wa kurushiku arimasen ka.** (koh-kyooo wah koo-roo-shee-koo ah-ree-mah-sehn kah.) (*Do you have any discomfort in breathing? [Literally: Don't you have any discomfort in breathing?]*)



If you want to recommend that your friend do something, like go to the hospital, place **hō ga ii** (hohh gah eee) (*it's better to*) after a verb in the past tense. Yes, strangely, even though such a recommendation refers to the future, you use the past tense of the verb. If you think someone should eat, say **Tabeta hō ga ii.** (tah-beh-tah hohh gah eee.). (If you were to insist on a literal translation, this sentence would translate as *the ate-alternative is good*, and that, my friend, is why you can't always rely on literal translations.) The past tense of the verb **taberu** (tah-beh-roo) (*to eat*) is **tabeta** (tah-beh-tah). It's very easy to form the past tense of a verb if you know the **te**-form. Replace the final **e** in the **te**-form with an **a**, and you instantly get the past tense. And if you want to speak politely, add **desu** to the end of **hō ga ii**. Check out these examples:

病院に行った方がいいですよ。 **Byōin ni itta hō ga ii desu yo.** (byohh-een nee eet-tah hohh gah eee deh-soo yoh.) (*You'd better to go to the hospital.*)

医者に見もらった方がいいよ。 **Isha ni mite moratta hō ga ii yo.** (ee-shah nee mee-teh moh-raht-tah hohh gah eee yo.) (*It's better to have your doctor check you.*)

休んだ方がいいよ。 **Yasunda hō ga ii yo.** (yah-soon-dah hohh gah eee yoh.) (*You'd better rest.*)

薬をのんだ方がいいですよ。 **Kusuri o nonda hō ga ii desu yo.** (koo-soo-ree oh nohn-dah hohh gah eee deh-soo yoh.) (*It's better to take medicine.*)

Interestingly, for saying that it's better *not* to do something, you can just use the present negative form in the plain/informal form. No need to get the past tense involved.

お酒は飲まない方がいいですよ。 **O-sake wa nomanai hō ga ii desu yo.** (oh-sah-keh wah noh-mah-nah-ee hohh gah eee deh-soo yoh.) (*You'd better not drink alcohol.*)

無理しない方がいいですよ。 **Muri shinai hō ga ii desu yo.** (moo-ree shee-nah-ee hohh gah eee deh-soo yoh.) (*You'd better not work/try too hard.*)

Check out Chapter 3 for the present negative form in the plain/informal style.

Navigating a Doctor's Visit

Understanding doctor-talk in your own language can be hard enough, let alone trying to decipher it in a foreign one. How are you supposed to get the doctor's help if you can't tell her what's wrong or comprehend her diagnosis and advice? Luckily, the following sections tell you how to refer to parts of your body, how to describe pains and other symptoms, and how to understand any basic diagnosis and treatment you may receive.

Referring to your body parts

To tell a doctor or nurse where you're experiencing pain or discomfort, you need Japanese words for body parts. Go over the terms in the following bullets, touching your body parts as you say the words for extra reinforcement.

- ✓ 頭 **atama** (ah-tah-mah) (*head*)
- ✓ 目 **me** (meh) (*eyes*)
- ✓ 耳 **mimi** (mee-mee) (*ears*)
- ✓ 鼻 **hana** (hah-nah) (*nose*)
- ✓ 口 **kuchi** (koo-chee) (*mouth*)
- ✓ 齒 **ha** (hah) (*tooth*)
- ✓ 首 **kubi** (koo-bee) (*neck*)
- ✓ 喉 **nodo** (noh-doh) (*throat*)
- ✓ 肩 **kata** (kah-tah) (*shoulder*)
- ✓ 胸 **mune** (moo-neh) (*chest/breast*)
- ✓ 背中 **senaka** (seh-nah-kah) (*back*)
- ✓ おなか **onaka** (oh-nah-kah) (*belly*)
- ✓ 腕 **ude** (oo-deh) (*arm*)
- ✓ 肘 **hiji** (hee-jee) (*elbow*)
- ✓ 手首 **tekubi** (teh-koo-bee) (*wrist*)
- ✓ 手 **te** (teh) (*hand/arm*)
- ✓ 指 **yubi** (yoo-bee) (*finger*)
- ✓ 腰 **koshi** (koh-shee) (*hip*)
- ✓ 膝 **hiza** (hee-zah) (*knee*)
- ✓ 関節 **kansetsu** (kahn-seh-tsoo) (*joints*)
- ✓ 足首 **ashikubi** (ah-shee-koo-bee) (*ankle*)
- ✓ 足 **ashi** (ah-shee) (*foot/leg*)
- ✓ 足の指 **ashi no yubi** (ah-shee noh yoo-bee) (*toes*)



If the word **ashi** (ah-shee) means both *foot* and *leg*, and the word **te** (teh) means both *hand* and *arm*, how do you know which is which? Context is everything, as you can see from the following examples:

兄は足が短い。 **Ani wa ashi ga mijikai.** (ah-nee wah ah-shee gah mee-jee-kah-ee.) (*My older brother's legs are short.*)

弟が私の足を踏んだ。 **Otōto ga watashi no ashi o funda.** (oh-tohh-toh gah wah-tah-shee noh ah-shee oh foon-dah.) (*My little brother stepped on my foot.*)

ピザは手で食べる。 **Piza wa te de taberu.** (pee-zah wah teh deh tah-beh-roo.) (*We eat pizza by hand.*)

猿は手が長い。 **Saru wa te ga nagai.** (sah-roo wah teh gah nah-gah-ee.) (*Monkeys have long arms.*)

You may also want to know what to call your important internal organs:

- ✓ 腸 **chō** (chohh) (*intestine*)
- ✓ 肺 **hai** (hah-ee) (*lungs*)
- ✓ 胃 **i** (ee) (*stomach*)
- ✓ 腎臟 **jinzō** (jeen-zohh) (*kidney*)
- ✓ 肝臟 **kanzō** (kahn-zohh) (*liver*)
- ✓ 脳 **nō** (nohh) (*brain*)
- ✓ 心臟 **shinzō** (sheen-zohh) (*heart*)

Complaining about your pain

Expect to be asked questions like the following at the doctor's office or in the emergency room:

- ✓ どうしましたか。 **Dō shimashita ka.** (dohh shee-mah-shee-tah kah.) (*What happened?*)
- ✓ いつからですか。 **Itsu kara desu ka.** (ee-tsoo kah-rah deh-soo kah.) (*For how long? [Literally: Since when is it going on?]*)
- ✓ どこが痛いんですか。 **Doko ga itai-n-desu ka.** (doh-koh gah ee-tah-een-deh-soo kah.) (*Where does it hurt?*)
- ✓ 熱はありますか。 **Netsu wa arimasu ka.** (neh-tsoo wah ah-ree-mah-soo kah.) (*Do you have a fever?*)

If some part of your body hurts, say the body part that hurts (refer to the preceding section), plus **ga** (gah), plus **itai** (ee-tah-ee) or **itai-n-desu** (ee-tah-een-deh-soo). By adding **-n-desu**, you sound polite and receptive to your doctor's response, as I discuss in Chapter 5. **Itai** (ee-tah-ee) is an adjective meaning *painful*, although in English, you often say *it hurts*. **Itai** is also what Japanese say for *ouch*. So **atama ga itai** basically means *head is ouch* — in other words, *I have a headache*. If more than one part hurts, list all the parts, using the particle **to** (toh) as a type of verbal comma and a stand-in

for *and*. Place **to** after each body part, except the last one, as in the following examples:

肩と首がとても痛いんです。 **Kata to kubi ga totemo itai-n-desu.** (kah-tah toh koo-bee gah toh-teh-moh ee-tah-een-deh-soo.) (*My shoulder and neck hurt a lot.*)

肩と腰と首が痛いんです。 **Kata to koshi to kubi ga itai-n-desu.** (kah-tah toh koh-shee toh koo-bee gah ee-tah-een-deh-soo.) (*My shoulder, back, and neck hurt.*)



To describe how something hurts, you can use funny image-sound words like the ones in the following list. These words are actually a small subset of Japanese sound symbolism that includes onomatopoeia, and they usually consist of a repetition of one or two syllables. No translations here, just descriptions. Sorry.

- ✓ チクチク **chiku-chiku** (chee-koo-chee-koo): Sharp, needle-like pain, like you may have with stomach complaints
- ✓ ガンガン **gan-gan** (gahn-gahn): Hammering or banging pain, as with a pounding headache
- ✓ ゴホンゴホン **gohon-gohon** (goh-hohn-goh-hohn): Deep coughing sounds
- ✓ ヒリヒリ **hiri-hiri** (hee-ree-hee-ree): Smarting pain, as with a bad sunburn
- ✓ ゼーゼー **zē-zē** (zehh-zehh): Wheezing sound in the chest
- ✓ ズキズキ **zuki-zuki** (zoo-kee-zoo-kee): Nailing or screwing pain in the head

Here are some examples of how you can weave these expressions into sentences:

頭がズキズキ痛いんです。 **Atama ga zuki-zuki itai-n-desu.** (ah-tah-mah gah zoo-kee-zoo-kee ee-tah-een-deh-soo.) (*I have a screwing pain in the head.*)

火傷したところがヒリヒリします。 **Yakedo shita tokoro ga hiri-hiri shimasu.** (yah-keh-doh shee-tah toh-koh-roh gah hee-ree-hee-ree shee-mah-soo.) (*The part I burned hurts.*)

胃がチクチクするんです。 **I ga chiku-chiku suru-n-desu.** (ee gah chee-koo-chee-koo soo-roon-deh-soo.) (*My stomach hurts with a tingling sensation.*)

Describing your symptoms

Expressing exactly how you're feeling with specific **shōjō** (shohh-johhh) (*symptoms*) is crucial for receiving the right diagnosis. A few **shōjō** may occur together. For example, bad stomach viruses cause nausea, which is usually

followed by diarrhea. Upper respiratory infections can give you a runny nose, a cough, and a very stuffy and congested night's sleep (or lack of sleep).

Think about your **shōjō** and then find them in the following list so you know how to describe what you're experiencing before you go to the doctor:

- ✓ 便秘をしている **benpi o shite iru** (behn-pee oh shee-teh ee-roo) (*to have constipation*)
- ✓ 下痢をしている **geri o shite iru** (geh-ree oh shee-teh ee-roo) (*to have diarrhea*)
- ✓ 吐き気がする **hakike ga suru** (hah-kee-keh gah soo-roo) (*to have nausea*)
- ✓ 鼻がつまっている **hana ga tsumatte iru** (hah-nah gah tsoo-maht-teh ee-roo) (*to have a stuffy nose*)
- ✓ 鼻水ができる **hanamizu ga deru** (hah-nah-mee-zoo gah deh-roo) (*to have a runny nose*)
- ✓ クシャミができる **kushami ga deru** (koo-shah-mee gah deh-roo) (*to sneeze*)
- ✓ 目がかゆい **me ga kayui** (meh gah kah-yoo-ee) (*to have itchy eyes*)
- ✓ 目眩がする **memai ga suru** (me-mah-ee gah soo-roo) (*to have dizziness*)
- ✓ 耳が痛い **mimi ga itai** (mee-mee gah ee-tah-ee) (*to have an earache*)
- ✓ 胸が痛い **mune ga itai** (moo-neh gah ee-tah-ee) (*to have chest pain*)
- ✓ 熱がある **netsu ga aru** (neh-tsoo gah ah-roo) (*to have a fever*)
- ✓ 喉が痛い **nodo ga itai** (noh-doh gah ee-tah-ee) (*to have a sore throat*)
- ✓ 寒気がする **samuke ga suru** (sah-moo-keh gah soo-roo) (*to have the chills*)
- ✓ 咳が出る **seki ga deru** (seh-kee gah deh-roo) (*to cough*)
- ✓ 頭痛がする **zutsū ga suru** (zoo-tsoo gah soo-roo) (*to have a headache*)
- ✓ ゼーゼーする **zē-zē suru** (zehh-zehh soo-roo) (*to wheeze*)

Conjugate the **ru**-verb **deru** (deh-roo) (*to come out*). You need it to describe all the annoying mucus that comes out when you cough, sneeze, and blow your nose when you have a cold — sorry, that's stuffy-speak for "cold."

<i>Japanese Script</i>	<i>Rōmaji</i>	<i>Pronunciation</i>
出る	deru	deh-roo
出ない	denai	deh-nah-ee
出 (ます)	de(masu)	deh(-mah-soo)
出て	dete	deh-teh

Receiving a diagnosis

A doctor can usually diagnose a minor cold or the flu just by talking with you, but sometimes you have to have tests done. No one wants to have a painful or time-consuming test, but if the doctor tells you that you need it, you'd better take it.

A few tests and procedures that a doctor may recommend are

- ✓ C A T スキャン CAT **sukyan** (kyah-toh soo-kyahn) (*CAT scan*)
- ✓ 超音波検査 chōonpa **kensa** (chohh-ohn-pah kehn-sah) (*ultrasound*)
- ✓ C T CT (sheee-tee) (*CT scan*)
- ✓ 血液検査 ketsueki **kensa** (keh-tsoo-eh-kee kehn-sah) (*blood test*)
- ✓ MRI **MRI** (eh-moo-ahh-roo-ah-ee) (*MRI*)
- ✓ 尿検査 nyō **kensa** (nyohh kehn-sah) (*urine test*)
- ✓ レントゲン rentogen (rehn-toh-gehn) (*X-ray*)
- ✓ ソノグラム sonoguramu (soh-noh-goo-rah-moo) (*sonogram*)

After you explain your symptoms to the doctor, have an exam, and undergo any necessary tests, it's judgment time. For your sake, I hope the **shindan** (sheen-dahn) (*diagnosis*) isn't serious. Possible **shindan** include the following:

- ✓ アレルギー arerugi (ah-reh-roo-geee) (*allergies*)
- ✓ 炎症 enshō (ehn-shohh) (*inflammation*)
- ✓ 肺炎 haien (hah-ee-ehn) (*pneumonia*)
- ✓ インフルエンザ infuruenza (een-foo-roo-ehn-zah) (*influenza/flu*)
- ✓ 花粉症 kafunshō (kah-foon-shohh) (*hay fever*)
- ✓ 感染 kansen (kahn-sehn) (*infection*)
- ✓ 関節炎 kansetsuen (kahn-seh-tssoo-ehn) (*arthritis*)
- ✓ 風邪 kaze (kah-zeh) (*cold*)
- ✓ 気管支炎 kikanshien (kee-kahn-shee-ehn) (*bronchitis*)
- ✓ 骨折 kossetsu (kohs-seh-tssoo) (*broken bone*)
- ✓ 盲腸 mōchō (mohh-chohh) (*appendicitis*)
- ✓ 捻挫 nenza (nehn-zah) (*sprain*)
- ✓ 脳震盪 nōshintō (nohh-sheen-tohh) (*concussion*)
- ✓ 食中毒 shokuchūdoku (shoh-koo-chooo-doh-koo) (*food poisoning*)

- ✓ ウィルス **wirusu** (wee-roo-soo) (*virus*)
- ✓ 喘息 **zensoku** (zehn-soh-koo) (*asthma*)

Getting treatment

Your doctor may give you some **kusuri** (koo-soo-ree) (*medication*) that makes you a bit more comfortable, such as one of the following:

- ✓ アスピリン **asupirin** (ah-soo-pee-reen) (*aspirin*)
- ✓ 鎮痛剤 **chintsūzai** (cheen-tsooo-zah-ee) (*pain reliever*)
- ✓ 解熱剤 **genetsuzai** (geh-neh-tssoo-zah-ee) (*fever reducer*)
- ✓ 抗生物質 **kōsei busshitsu** (kohh-sehh boos-shee-tssoo) (*antibiotic*)
- ✓ 咳止め **sekidome** (seh-kee-doh-meh) (*cough suppressant*)

There's no cure for a cold, so all you can do is try to treat your symptoms and make your life a little less miserable. Ask your grandma for her natural home remedy. One Japanese traditional cold remedy is **tamago zake** (tah-mah-goh zah-keh) (*egg sake*) — heated sake with beaten egg. What's your secret remedy? Ginger tea? Chicken soup? Honey? Orange juice?

The doctor should ask you **Yakubutsu arerugi wa arimasu ka.** (yah-koo-bootsu ah-reh-roo-gee wah ah-ree-mah-soo kah.) (*Are you allergic to any medication?*) before prescribing any medication, but if for some reason she doesn't and you know you're allergic to some medications, don't forget to mention it. For example, you can say **Penishirin ni arerugi ga arimasu.** (peh-nee-sheer-en nee ah-reh-roo-geee gah ah-ree-mah-soo.) (*I'm allergic to penicillin.*)

If you have an injury, you may come home with one of these:

- ✓ ギブス **gipusu** (gee-poo-soo) (*cast*)
- ✓ 包帯 **hōtai** (hohh-tah-ee) (*bandage*)
- ✓ 松葉杖 **matsubazue** (mah-tssoo-bah-zoo-eh) (*crutches*)
- ✓ 湿布 **shippu** (sheep-poo) (*hot or cold compress*)

Calling the Police



The police emergency number in Japan is 110. Japanese call it **110-ban** (hyah-koo-tohh-bahn). Yes, they usually say **hyakutō-ban** (hyah-koo-tohh-bahn) rather than **hyakuju-ban** (hyah-koo-jooo-bahn) — just one of those things. The

number for an accident or a fire is different: **119-ban** (hyah-koo-jooo-kyooo-bahn). Don't confuse these numbers with your own emergency number — 911 in the United States, for example.

When you call emergency numbers in any country, calm down and first tell the dispatcher where you are. Then explain what happened. The following sections explain how to report an accident to the police and report lost or stolen possessions.

Reporting an accident to the police

If you see a **jiko** (jee-koh) (*accident*), report it to the **keisatsu** (keh-h-sah-tssoo) (*police*). The verb you need to report a **jiko** is **aru** (ah-roo) (*to exist*); use it in the past tense — *There was an accident*. — and the polite/neutral style (because you're talking to a police officer). So you need to conjugate **aru** into the polite past tense form, **arimashita** (ah-ree-mah-shee-tah), as in the following examples:

事故がありました。 **Jiko ga arimashita.** (jee-koh gah ah-ree-mah-shee-tah.) (*There was an accident.*)

高田町で事故がありました。 **Takada-chō de jiko ga arimashita.** (tah-kah-dah-chohh deh jee-koh gah ah-ree-mah-shee-tah.) (*There was an accident in Takada Town.*)

I don't want you **au** (ah-oo) (*to be involved in*) an accident, but if you are, make sure to mark **jiko** with the particle **ni** when you use the verb **au**, as in **jiko ni au** (jee-koh nee ah-oo) (*to be involved in an accident*). The polite past tense form of **au** is **aimashita**: **Hidoi jiko ni aimashita.** (hee-doh-ee jee-koo nee ah-ee-mah-shee-tah.) (*I was involved in a terrible accident.*)

Conjugate the **u**-verb **au**. Watch out for the **w** sound in the negative form.

<i>Japanese Script</i>	<i>Rōmaji</i>	<i>Pronunciation</i>
遭う	au	ah-oo
遭わない	awanai	ah-wah-nah-ee
遭い（ます）	ai(masu)	a-ee(-mah-soo)
あって	atte	aht-teh

Unfortunately, at some point you may be the one to cause the accident. In that case, you need to conjugate the **u**-verb **okosu** (o-koh-soo) (*to cause*). Create **s/sh**-syllables.

<i>Japanese Script</i>	<i>Rōmaji</i>	<i>Pronunciation</i>
起こす	okosu	oh-koh-soo
起こさない	okosanai	oh-koh-sah-nah-ee
起こし (ます)	okoshi(masu)	oh-koh-shee(-mah-soo)
起こして	okoshite	oh-koh-shee-teh

You often need to specify the nature of an accident so that the people responding know what to expect. The following list gives you an idea of some of the types of **jiko** you may encounter:

- ✓ バイクの事故 **baiku no jiko** (bah-ee-koo noh jee-koh) (*motorcycle accident*)
- ✓ ガス漏れ事故 **gasumore jiko** (gah-soo-moh-reh jee-koh) (*gas leak accident*)
- ✓ 自動車事故 **jidōsha jiko** (jee-dohh-shah jee-koh) (*auto accident*)
- ✓ 火事 **kaji** (kah-jee) (*fire*)
- ✓ 怪我 **kega** (keh-gah) (*injury*)
- ✓ 交通事故 **kōtsū jiko** (kohh-tssoo jee-koh) (*traffic accident*)

Unfortunately, **kōtsū jiko** are everyday events in most cities. If you're involved in an accident and no one gets hurt, consider yourself lucky in an unlucky situation, even if it's your fault.

To avoid future legal complications over responsibilities, call the police, tell them where you are, and wait for the police officer to arrive. To tell the police how to find you, use the location and direction words listed in Chapter 8. And while you're waiting for them to arrive, you may as well conjugate the u-verb **matsu** (mah-tssoo) (*to wait*).

<i>Japanese Script</i>	<i>Rōmaji</i>	<i>Pronunciation</i>
待つ	matsu	mah-tssoo
待たない	matanai	mah-tah-nah-ee
待ち (ます)	machi(masu)	mah-chee(-mah-soo)
待って	matte	maht-teh

Talkin' the Talk



Takeshi was just involved in a collision. He calls the police with his cellphone. (Track 38)

Takeshi: **Moshimoshi. Ima kuruma no jiko ni atta-n-desu.**
moh-shee-moh-shee. ee-mah koo-roo-mah noh jee-koh nee aht-tahn-deh-soo.
Hello. I was just in a car accident.

Police: **Dareka kega o shimashita ka.**
dah-reh-kah keh-gah oh shee-mah-shee-tah kah.
Did anyone get injured?

Takeshi: **Îe.**
eee-eh.
No.

Police: **Ima doko desu ka.**
ee-mah doh-koh deh-soo kah.
Where are you now?

Takeshi: **Takada-chô no yûbinkyoku no mae no kôsaten desu.**
tah-kah-dah-chohh noh yooo-been-kyoh-koo noh mah-eh noh kohh-sah-tehn deh-soo.
I'm at the intersection in front of the post office in Takada Town.

Police: **Sugu kêsatsukan ga ikimasu. Go-fun gurai matte kudasai.**
soo-goo kehh-sah-tssoo-kahn gah ee-kee-mah-soo. goh-foon goo-rah-ee maht-teh koo-dah-sah-ee.
An officer will be there soon. Please wait for about five minutes.

Words to Know

moshimoshi	moh-shee-moh-shee	hello
kega	keh-gah	injury
yūbinkyoku	yooo-been-kyoh-koo	post office
no mae	noh mah-eh	in front of
kōsaten	kohh-sah-tehn	intersection
sugu	soo-goo	soon
keisatsukan	keh-h-sah-tssoo-kahn	police officer

Reporting a crime

Japan is a quite safe country and has a relatively low crime rate. Women can walk around in the city at night feeling pretty safe. The contribution of police boxes called **kōban** (kohh-bahn) is absolutely significant for the high level of safety in Japan. However, if you're attacked, involved in a crime, or witness any criminal act in Japan, report it to the police immediately. You may need to know some of these nouns related to crimes:

- ✓ 暴行 **bōkō** (bohh-kohh) (*assault*)
- ✓ 強盗 **gōtō** (gohh-tohh) (*robbery, robber*)
- ✓ 放火 **hōka** (hohh-kah) (*arson*)
- ✓ 詐欺 **sagi** (sah-gee) (*fraud*)
- ✓ 殺人 **satsujin** (sah-tssoo-jeen) (*murder*)
- ✓ 窃盜 **settō** (seht-tohh) (*theft*)
- ✓ 誘拐 **yūkai** (yoo-kah-ee) (*kidnapping*)

Reporting lost or stolen belongings

If you lose a **handobaggu** (hahn-doh-bahg-goo) (*handbag*), **saifu** (sah-ee-foo) (*wallet*), or **sūtsukēsu** (sooo-tsoo-kehh-soo) (*suitcase*), tell the authorities where you lost it and what it looks like. (Use the words from Chapter 10 to describe the item's color and size.) And think about what was in it so you can list those items on the police report. If your **handobaggu** or **saifu** is stolen, you may also be missing the following:

- ✓ 現金 **genkin** (gehn-keen) (*cash*)
- ✓ 鍵 **kagi** (kah-gee) (*keys*)
- ✓ クレジットカード **kurejitto kādo** (koo-reh-jeeht-toh kahh-doh) (*credit card*)
- ✓ 写真 **shashin** (shah-sheen) (*photos*)
- ✓ 運転免許証 **unten menkyōshō** (oon-tehn mehn-kyoh-shohh) (*driver's license*)

To describe the contents of your bag or wallet, use the phrase **haitte iru** (hah-eet-teh ee-roo) (*to be in it*). **Haitte** is the **te**-form of the verb **hairu** (hah-ee-roo) (*to be placed in somewhere*). Conjugate the **u**-verb **hairu**, which also means *to enter* in some contexts.

<i>Japanese Script</i>	<i>Rōmaji</i>	<i>Pronunciation</i>
入る	hairu	hah-ee-roo
入らない	hairanai	hah-ee-rah-nah-ee
入り (ます)	hairi(masu)	hah-ee-ree(-mah-soo)
入って	haitte	hah-eet-teh



If you add the verb **iru** (ee-roo) (*to exist*) after another verb in the **te**-form, you're talking about a state. For example, **haitte iru** is the state after something entered. This concept — that something would be in the state of having entered somewhere — is hard to understand in English, but it just means “something is in it.” That’s it.

So **Genkin ga haitte iru**. (gehn-keehn gah hah-eet-teh ee-roo.) means *Some cash is in it*. But in a polite/neutral context, such as when you’re talking to the police, say **Genkin ga haitte imasu**. (gehn-keehn gah hah-eet-teh ee-mah-soo.) instead. And if you have more than one item in your bag, list everything by using the particle **to** (toh) after each item except the last one. These examples help you explain to the police what your missing item contains:

写真が入っています。 **Shashin ga haitte imasu**. (shah-sheen gah hah-eet-teh ee-mah-soo.) (*It has a photo in it. [Literally: A photo is in it.]*)

財布とパスポートが入っています。 **Saifu to pasupōto ga haitte imasu.**
 (sah-ee-foo toh pah-soo-pohh-toh gah hah-eet-teh ee-mah-soo.) (*My wallet and my passport are in it.*)

現金とクレジットカードと写真が入っています。 **Genkin to kurejitto kādo to shashin ga haitte imasu.** (gehn-keen toh koo-reh-jeet-toh kahh-doh toh shah-sheen gah hah-eet-teh ee-mah-soo.) (*Some cash, a credit card, and a photograph are in it.*)



If you want to list the items as examples, implying that there are other items, use the particle **ya** (yah) rather than **to** (toh). For example, if you say **Genkin ya kurejitto kādo ya shashin ga haitte imasu.** (gehn-keen yah koo-reh-jeet-toh kahh-doh yah shah-sheen gah hah-eet-teh ee-mah-soo.) (*Some cash, a credit card, a photograph, and so on are in it.*), it sounds like there are other items in the bag as well.



If you lose something in a store, airport, or train station, listen for an announcement. If you're paged over the public address system, it's a good sign. An announcement states your name and **o-koshi kudasai** (oh-koh-shee koo-dah-sah-ee). This term is a super-polite, businesslike phrase that means *please come* and uses the stem form — **koshi** — of the verb **kosu** (koh-soo) (*to come*). If you're curious about what the **o** and **kudasai** are doing, take a look at Chapter 15.

Getting Legal Help

Japan isn't a very litigious society, and Japanese don't settle disputes through the courts as often as Americans seem to, but if you find that you need legal assistance in Japan, you can always talk to a **bengoshi** (behn-goh-shee) (*lawyer*). Contacting your country's **ryōjikan** (ryohhh-jee-kahn) (*consultate*) is also a good idea if you run into trouble.

You may find these sentences helpful if you require legal assistance while traveling in Japan:

- ✓ アメリカ領事館に連絡してください。 **Amerika ryōjikan ni renraku shite kudasai.** (ah-meh-ree-kah ryohhh-jee-kahn nee rehn-rah-koo shee-teh koo-dah-sah-ee.) (*Please contact the American consulate.*)
- ✓ 弁護士を呼んでください。 **Bengoshi o yonde kudasai.** (behn-goh-shee oh yohn-deh koo-dah-sah-ee.) (*Please call a lawyer.*)
- ✓ 私の弁護士に話してください。 **Watashi no bengoshi ni hanashite kudasai.** (wah-tah-shee noh behn-goh-shee nee hah-nah-shee-teh koo-dah-sah-ee.) (*Please talk to my lawyer.*)

Foreigners in Japan are subject to the laws of Japan. If you're arrested, know that you have your right to remain silent, to hire a lawyer at your own expense, and to have the embassy or the consulate notified of your arrest.



Fun & Games

Write the Japanese words for the following body parts on the corresponding lines. Check the answers in Appendix D.



Illustration by Elizabeth Kurtzman

1. _____
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____

7. _____
8. _____
9. _____
10. _____
11. _____

Chapter 20

Ten Things Never to Say in Japanese

In This Chapter

- ▶ Making sure you don't sound like a child
- ▶ Speaking respectfully
- ▶ Using the right words in the right contexts

Social customs are culturally created rules that differ from country to country because they're often tied to the histories of nations and peoples. Pasts rooted in democracy, feudalism, totalitarianism, pioneer spirit, or liberal or conservative values, to name a few, obviously tend to give rise to different customs. Because U.S. society and Japanese society are built on different customs, what's considered polite for folks from the United States may be rude for Japanese at times. To help you avoid unintentionally offending your Japanese cohorts, this chapter alerts you to ten things that you shouldn't say when you're with Japanese people.

"San" After Your Own Name

When you talk with Japanese people, they'll say your name and then say **-san** (sahn) all the time. But don't copy them by placing **-san** after your own name when you refer to yourself. For example, don't say **Watashi wa Sumisu-san desu.** (wah-tah-shee wah soo-mee-soo-sahn deh-soo.) (*I'm Mr. Smith.*) You'll sound like a kid if you do. Instead, say **Watashi wa Sumisu desu.** (wah-tah-shee wah soo-mee-soo deh-soo.) (*I'm Smith.*)



The function of **-san** is to show respect to others; therefore, use it after other people's names but not after your own name. You can use **-san** after a family name or a given name, but for adults, it's more common to use a family name than a given name when addressing someone.

Your Boss's or Teacher's First Name

Never call your Japanese bosses or teachers by their first names, no matter how long you've worked or studied with them. Call them by their last names with the appropriate titles that show their professional positions or functions, like **shachō** (shah-chohh) (*company president*) or **sensei** (sehn-sehh) (*professor*): **Tanaka shachō** (tah-nah-kah shah-chohh) (*President Tanaka*) or **Tanaka sensei** (tah-nah-kah sehn-sehh) (*Professor Tanaka*), for example. If their titles are unclear, use the suffix **-san** (sahn) following their last names, as in **Tanaka-san** (tah-nah-kah-sahn) (*Mr./Ms. Tanaka*).

"O-genki Desu Ka" to the Person You Saw Yesterday

In America, you can say *How are you?* to a person regardless of whether you just saw him or her yesterday. However, that usage is inappropriate for the closest Japanese equivalent, **O-genki desu ka.** (oh-gehn-kee deh-soo kah.), which literally means *Are you well?* Use this phrase only when you see someone you haven't seen for a while

Note: Young people have started to say the short version, **Genki.** (gehn-kee.) (*Fine?*), as if it's for daily greeting. However, this expression is still quite different from the usage of **O-genki desu ka.**

"Sayōnara" to Your Family

Although many Westerners equate the word **sayōnara** (sah-yohh-nah-rah) with a casual *goodbye*, Japanese really only use it when they part with non-family members. When they leave their family members for school or work in the morning, they say **Ittekimasu.** (eet-teh-kee-mah-soo.), which literally means *I'll leave and come back.* (That translation may sound a little clunky, but this phrase is a customary Japanese goodbye.) In other contexts where Japanese have to part with their families, they usually say **Jā ne.** (jahh neh.) (*Okay? Well, see you?*) or **Jā mata ne.** (jahh mah-tah neh.) (*Okay, see you later.*). (For more information about **sayōnara**, see Chapter 4.)

"Thank You" for a Compliment

In English, if someone says "You look pretty in that dress." or "You're really smart.", you usually say "Thanks!" right away, right? Otherwise, the other

person may think you're snotty. However, Japanese custom is to deny the compliment by saying **īe.** (eee-eh.) (*No.*) or **Zenzen.** (zehn-zehn.) (*Not at all.*). Now, I'm not saying you shouldn't give Japanese people compliments. After all, who doesn't love to receive a little positive feedback? Just be aware that Japanese will deny your compliments verbally even though they're extremely happy when they hear them. It's just part of the Japanese modesty.

So if you're traveling in Japan and someone says **Nihongo ga jōzu desu ne.** (nee-hohn-goh gah johh-zoo deh-soo neh.) (*Your Japanese is good, isn't it?*), you'll impress that person even further if you skip the **Arigatō.** (ah-ree-gah-tohh.) (*Thanks.*) and say **īe.**, **Zenzen.**, or **Mada mada.** (mah-dah mah-dah.) (*Not yet, not yet.*).

"My Mom Is Pretty" to Outsiders

Another aspect of Japanese modesty (see the preceding section) is that you shouldn't tell outsiders (as in people other than your family) that your mom is pretty. Doing so sounds childish and immodest to Japanese. The same principle applies to other members of your family and other types of characteristics; don't tell outsiders that your little brother or your child is smart even if the kid is a valedictorian. The division between insiders and outsiders greatly limits what you can say.

Interestingly, this insider/outsider distinction can be extended to business contexts: for Japanese, their colleagues are their insiders while their clients are outsiders. So pay close attention when you're about to do business with Japanese.

"Yes" Right After Being Offered Food

Don't say **hai** (hah-ee) (*yes*) right away when you're offered food or drink. Japanese say **īe, ii desu.** (eee-eh, eee deh-soo.) or **īe, kekkō desu.** (ee-ee-eh, kehk-kohh deh-soo.), which mean *No, thank you.*, when they're offered food or beverages, even if they're very hungry or thirsty. The host or hostess almost always offers the items again, so the guests eventually accept the offer by saying something like **Jā, itadakimasu. Arigatō gozaimasu.** (jahh, eeh-tah-dah-kee-mah-soo. ah-ree-gah-tohh goh-zah-ee-mah-soo.) (*Oh, then, I'll have some. Thank you.*)

However, when food or drinks are already brought, you can accept the offer right away, saying **jā, itadakimasu**, without trying to refuse them once.

“Anata” When Talking to Someone

Although using someone’s name and title repeatedly in a conversation may sound strange to you, that’s precisely what you should do when speaking to a Japanese person. Your inclination is probably to use the pronoun **anata** (ah-nah-tah) (*you*), but don’t; the pronoun **anata** is almost forbidden in Japanese conversations. For some reason, it sounds snobby or arrogant unless you’re a wife addressing her husband. A wife can say to her husband, **Kore wa anata no?** (koh-reh wah ah-nah-tah noh.) (*Is this yours?*). In addition, a wife can call her husband by saying **anata**, as if saying *Honey!* That’s a strange use of *you*, right?

“Aishite Imasu” to Express Likes

The literal translation of *to love* in Japanese is **aishite imasu** (ah-ee-shee-teh ee-mah-soo). However, people say this phrase in very serious occasions or contexts only, like when they’re proposing. In English, you often hear people say they love something, like *I love dogs!*, but if you say **Inu o aishite iru**. (ee-noo oh ah-ee-shee-teh ee-mah-soo.) just to mean you love dogs, people may think you’re weird; you’ll sound like you want to get married to a dog or to dedicate the rest of your life to dogs. Similarly, if you say **Ano sūgaku no sensei o aishite imasu**. (ah-noh sooo-gah-koo noh senh-sehh oh ah-ee-shee-teh ee-mah-soo.) (*I love the math teacher.*), you’ll sound scandalous or unethical.



To say you like someone or something in a general sense, use **suki desu** (soo-kee deh-soo) (*to like*) or **dai-suki desu** (dah-ee-soo-kee deh-soo) (*to like very much*), and mark the person or item you like with the particle **ga** (gah). For example, **Inu ga suki desu**. (ee-noo gah soo-kee deh-soo.) (*I love dogs.*). See Chapter 6 for more about **suki desu** and **dai-suki desu**.

“Do You Want Coffee?”

Japanese people feel shy about expressing their desire for foods and drinks to nonfamily members, so asking them **Kōhī ga hoshii desu ka**. (kohh-heee gah hoh-shee-ee deh-soo kah.) (*Do you want coffee?*) directly may make them uncomfortable. Instead, say **Kōhī wa ikaga desu ka**. (kohh-heeee wah ee-kah-ga deh-soo kah.) (*How about coffee?*). Or if you’re talking to your close friend or roommate, you can just say **Kōhī wa dō**. (kohh-heeee wah dohh.) (*How about coffee?*) with a rising question intonation. **Dō** and **ikaga** both mean *how*, and **ikaga** is just the polite counterpart of **dō**.

Chapter 21

Ten Favorite Japanese Expressions

In This Chapter

- ▶ Responding to the situation
- ▶ Unveiling your excitement
- ▶ Showing your attitude

Life is full of **ki-do-ai-raku** (kee-doh-ah-ee-rah-koo) (*delight-anger-sorrow-fun*), and some phrases slip out of Japanese mouths repeatedly in response to different daily situations. Mastering these common expressions, whether they're simple adverbs or full sentences, is essential. That's why I give you ten popular Japanese expressions in this chapter.



Although I note in Chapter 3 that Japanese doesn't use question marks, I've included them in some phrases in this chapter when the expression is very short and doesn't contain a question particle that would otherwise tip you off. That way, you can be sure to use these expressions with the proper intonation.

Yatta!

やった! **Yatta!** (yaht-tah!) (*I did it!*)

Say **Yatta!** when you accomplish something big, receive a great opportunity, or feel victorious. Passing a difficult test, getting the job you wanted, or winning the lottery — these all qualify as **Yatta!** material. I hope you get the opportunity to use this expression every day.

Hontō?

本当？ Hontō? (hohn-tohh?) (*Really?*)

Say **Hontō?** with a rising intonation to confirm what you've just heard. Suppose your colleague tells you that she's getting married to your boss. Respond to the news by saying **Hontō?** What if your friend says that he'll give his car to you for free? Say **Hontō?** before saying thank you. You can say **Hontō?** in a lot of situations because so many unbelievable things happen every day.

Sasuga!

さすが！ Sasuga! (sah-soo-gah!) (*I'm impressed by you, as usual!*)

The literal meaning of **sasuga** is *as might have been expected*, but the expression is commonly used as a compliment when someone who had a good reputation has done an impressive job as expected. Suppose your friend is a good athlete, and he has just won the gold medal in a skiing competition. You can tell him **Sasuga!**, meaning *I knew that you could win the prize! You were cool, as usual.* If your company president has just created a new day-care center and a recreation facility for the employees, you can say **Sasuga shachō!** (sah-soo-gah shah-chohh!) to her. It means *I admire your usual thoughtfulness, president.*



The difference between the adjective **sugoi** (soo-goh-ee) (*great*) and the saying **sasuga** is that **sasuga** means not just *great* but *great as always*.

Mochiron!

もちろん！ Mochiron! (moh-chee-rohn!) (*Of course!*)

Mochiron is the favorite adverb of confident people. Use it when you're 100 percent confident in your opinion. So if your spouse ever asks you, "Would you marry me if you had a chance to do it all over again?", take my advice: Just say **mochiron** because you only live once and will never actually be faced with the decision (or with sleeping on the couch because you gave the wrong answer).

Ā, yokatta.

ああ、よかった。Ā, yokatta. (ahh, yoh-kaht-tah.) (*Oh, good.*)

Say Ā, **yokatta**, every time you feel like saying *What a relief!* or *Oh, good.* If you're Mr. or Ms. Worrier, you may say Ā, **yokatta** ten times a day. For example

Did I turn off the stove?

Yes, you did.

Ā, **yokatta**.

My daughter was kidnapped!

No, she's right there behind you.

Ā, **yokatta**.

Zenzen.

ぜんぜん。Zenzen. (zehn-zehn.) (*Not at all.*)

Zenzen is an adverb used with a negative verb or adjective, but it's often used by itself as the phrase of denial. Suppose that someone asks you, "Am I disturbing you?" when he's not bothering you at all. Say **zenzen** and shake your head. (If he's your boss, though, you may still want to say **zenzen** even if he is disturbing you.)

Nani?

何？ Nani? (nah-nee?) (*What?*)

Nani is a question word that's handy when you talk with a Japanese person. Say **Nani?** with a rising intonation when you don't hear or understand what the other person said.



You can also say **Nani?** when you can't believe or don't like what you hear. For example, suppose your significant other suddenly announces, "I'm getting married to Tom." If your name isn't Tom, you can surely say **Nani?** — assuming you have the ability to form words at that point.

Dōshiyō?

どうしよう。 Dōshiyō? (dohh-shee-yohh?) (*What shall I do?*)

Say **dōshiyō** when you're in a panic and have no idea what to do. You can repeat it over and over while you try to think of what to do: **Dōshiyō, dōshiyō, dōshiyō.** Now you sound like you're in big trouble. What happened? Oh, you've locked your car door with your keys and your dog inside? Maybe you should check out Chapter 18 for advice on contacting the police.

Yappari.

やっぱり。 Yappari. (yahp-pah-ree.) (*I knew it would happen.*)

Sometimes you have a vague suspicion that something will happen, and then it actually happens. At times like that, say **yappari**. Suppose that you haven't received a newspaper for the last month, but the newspaper delivery person says that he has dropped it off in front of your door every day. You suspect your neighbor is the culprit. One day, you wake up earlier than usual and see your neighbor picking up your newspaper. Your suspicion is confirmed, and you can say **yappari**.

Ah, Bikkurishita!

ああ、びっくりした。 Ah, **bikkurishita!** (ahh, beek-koo-ree-shee-tah!) (*What a surprise!*)

Say **Ah, bikkurishita!** when you're very surprised. If your family throws you a surprise party, say **Ah, bikkurishita!** after they shout out *Surprise!*.

Chapter 22

Ten Phrases That Make You Sound Fluent in Japanese

In This Chapter

- ▶ Greeting guests
- ▶ Giving it your best shot
- ▶ Expressing sympathy or encouragement

All languages have some obscure or unique expressions that provide an authentic flavor of the culture. The literal translations are often not transparent, and your command of these expressions depends on a deep understanding of the culture and values behind the language. In this chapter, I give you ten phrases that can make you sound Japanese. Master these expressions and use them in the right context to feel the Japanese mentality and spirit.

Enryo Shinaide.

遠慮しないで。 **Enryo shinai de.** (ehn-ryoh shee-nah-ee deh.) (*Don't be shy.*)

Japanese guests often appear to be very shy. They usually refuse offers of food or drink at least once, no matter what; it's just a part of their politeness. If you're the host, the customary response is to say **Enryo shinaide** right after your guest says *No, thank you*. Using this phrase indicates that you're a gracious host and encourages your guest to accept your kind offer the second time.

Mottainai.

もったいない。 **Mottainai.** (moht-tah-ee-nah-ee.) (*What a waste./It's too good.*)

Even though Japanese have become spoiled by disposable goods — such as plastic diapers, paper cups, and paper towels — they still hate to waste things. They constantly express their objections to waste by saying **mottainai**. *What? Are you going to throw away that sweater? Mottainai. Give it to me.*



This phrase doesn't just express your objection to throwing away things; you can also say **mottainai** if someone lacks a true appreciation for something of value, such as when your children don't appreciate good food. *What? You gave steak to the dog? Mottainai.*

You can also use **mottainai** for discussing how somebody is wasting their time with a particular romantic partner. For example, when you hear that Emily — the valedictorian and the most popular girl in school — is going out with Devin — a guy who's far from good-looking and spends all his time eating and sleeping — you may want to say **mottainai!**

O-saki Ni.

おさきに。 **O-saki ni.** (oh-sah-kee nee.) (*Pardon me, but I'm leaving now.*)

Although the literal meaning of **o-saki ni** is *earlier*, Japanese use this expression to politely say goodbye in all sorts of contexts and locations — a waiting room, a restaurant, a library, a party, and so on. The **o** at the beginning of the expression **o-saki ni** is the honorific prefix. When you have to leave someplace earlier than a friend who is staying behind, or even a stranger that you've struck up a conversation with, tell them **O-saki ni.** to display your thoughtfulness for the people who can't leave the place yet. In a business context, like at your workplace, you can add **shitsurei shimasu** (shee-tsoo-rehh shee-mah-soo) after **o-saki ni.** **Shitsurei shimasu** literally means *I'll be rude*, but it's a very polite way of saying goodbye to your superiors and business clients. (Flip to Chapter 4 for more about **shitsurei shimasu**.)

Kanpai!

乾杯！ **Kanpai!** (kahn-pah-ee!) (*Toast!/Cheers!*)

When celebrating something, hold a glass of wine or sake and have a toast by saying **Kanpai!** **Kanpai** is used in almost all formal and informal gatherings in Japan. The one exception may be funeral and memorial services, where **kenpai** (kehn-pah-ee) or **itadakimasu** (ee-tah-dah-kee-mah-soo) is used instead. So the next time you have something to celebrate, don't hesitate to say **Kanpai!**

Ganbatte!

がんばって！ **Ganbatte!** (gahn-baht-teh!) (*Try your best, and good luck!*)

Japanese often believe that the effort is more important than the result. Trying one's best is the only way to go. When your friend is going to take an important exam, tell him or her **Ganbatte!**. And if you're seriously studying Japanese, I want to tell you **Ganbatte!**

Shikata ga nai.

仕方がない。 **Shikata ga nai.** (shee-kah-tah gah nah-ee.) (*There's no choice.*) **Shikata** means *method*, so it literally means *A method does not exist.*

When you're in a difficult situation, look at all the possible solutions. If none of them will work well, choose a solution that you know isn't part of the best-case scenario and say **Shikata ga nai.** to convey your disappointment and acceptance of the given fact.

Suppose that you miss your plane home and no other flights are departing until tomorrow morning. You have to give up the idea of going home today. In such a context, say **Shikata ga nai.** and start looking for a hotel. Suppose that you can't find a hotel and have to give up the idea of sleeping on a bed. Say **Shikata ga nai.** again and sleep on a bench at the airport. The expression somehow smoothes out inevitably bad situations. Life goes on. **Shikata ga nai.**

Okage-sama De.

おかげさまで。 **O-kage-sama de.** (oh-kah-geh-sah-mah de.) (*Luckily, thanks to you and other people.*)

If someone asks you **O-genki desu ka** (oh-gehn-kee deh-soo kah) (*How are you?*), answering with **Genki desu** (gehn-kee deh-soo) (*I'm fine*) is perfectly okay. However, you'll sound modest, thankful, and sophisticated if you say **O-kage-sama de.** instead. The original meaning of this very modest expression is that your well-being and health are due to God and other people, including the person you're talking to. By the way, how are you?

Tsumaranai Mono Desu Ga.

つまらないのですが。 **Tsumaranai mono desu ga.** (tsoo-mah-rah-nah-ee moh-noh deh-soo gah.) (*It's a trivial/boring item, but . . .*)

Japanese people always bring a gift when invited to other people's houses for a meal. The items are usually quite expensive, but the givers always say **Tsumaranai mono desu ga**, an expression based on Japanese modesty. It's just a sentence fragment that means *It's a trivial or boring item, but [please accept it]*. Next time you go to your Japanese friend's house for dinner, give him or her your gift as you say **Tsumaranai mono desu ga.**, even if you think it's an exceptionally good gift.

Yoroshiku.

宜しく。 **Yoroshiku.** (yoh-roh-shee-koo.) (*I'm pleased to meet you./I appreciate your helping me.*)

Using the phrase **Yoroshiku.** shows your polite and modest attitude. The literal meaning of **yoroshiku** is *appropriately, favorably, or as needed*, but you can say it when you meet someone for the very first time. The concept behind this usage is *Please treat me appropriately.*; you wouldn't want to say such a thing directly, but alluding to it with **Yoroshiku.** speaks to the Japanese modesty. Just don't think about the literal meaning; use **Yoroshiku.** as an equivalent to *Nice to meet you.*

You can also say **yoroshiku** right after asking a favor of someone. The underlying idea is *Thank you for helping me, and I hope you handle it for me appropriately.*, which roughly means *I appreciate your helping me.*

Taihen Desu Ne.

大変ですね。 **Taihen desu ne.** (tah-ee-hen deh-soo neh.) (*That's tough.*)

This expression is a phrase of sympathy. Use it when your friends tell you about their hardships related to sickness, financial problems, relationship troubles, or any other kind of difficult situation that requires physical efforts and/or causes mental stress, worries, or financial expense. Suppose that your friend tells you that he has to pay for five kids to go to college. You can tell him **Taihen desu ne.**